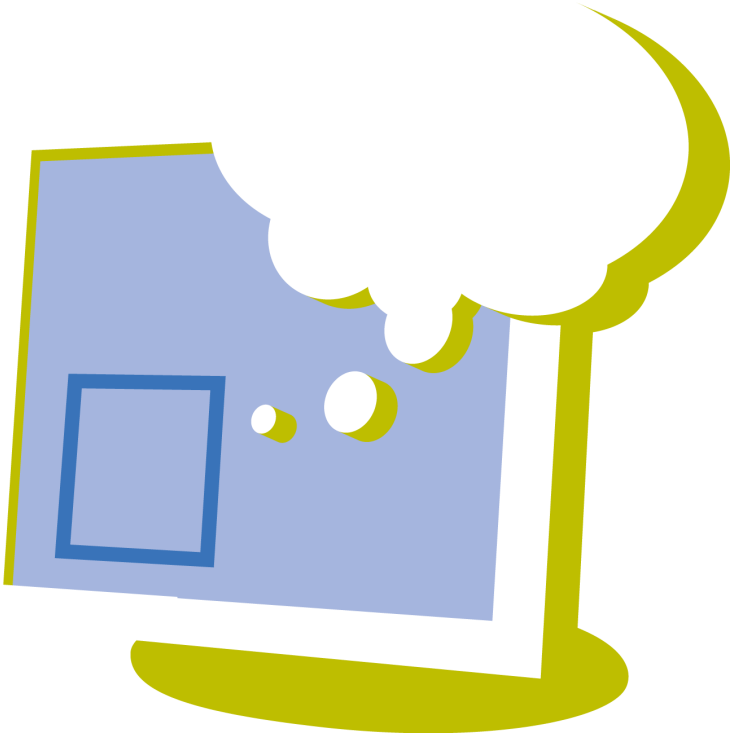
Mind Express



jabbla

WE ALL HAVE A VOICE

This document is a translation of the original Dutch user manual.

Version 20180322

Content

A Introduction 9

1 What is new in Mind Express 4.3.2?....10
2 What is new in Mind Express 4.3.3?....10
3 What is new in Mind Express 4.3.4?....11
4 What is new in Mind Express 4.4?....11
5 License Agreement....12
6 Introduction....12
7 Overview of the Mind Express versions....13
8 Target Group....14

B Getting started with Mind Express 15

1 Installing Mind Express....16
1.1 Installing Mind Express....16
1.2 Installing Mind Express (default setup)....16
1.3 Installing Mind Express (custom setup)....17
1.4 Activating the fixed Mind Express license....18
1.5 Requesting the Mind Express activation code by telephone and activating the fixed license....18
1.6 Requesting the Mind Express activation code by e-mail and activating the fixed license....18
1.7 Activating the fixed Mind Express license using an activation code....18
1.8 Activating the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet....19
1.9 Checking the version and serial number of Mind Express....19
1.10 Showing the use of Mind Express symbol sets....19
1.11 Removing the fixed Mind Express license....20
1.12 Deleting the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet....20
1.13 Requesting the Mind Express removal code by telephone and deleting the fixed license....20
1.14 Requesting the Mind Express removal code by e-mail....21
1.15 Activating the fixed Mind Express license using a removal code....21
2 Starting up Mind Express....21
3 Starting Mind Express for the first time with a web license....22
4 Changing the security on Mind Express....22
5 The Mind Express window....22
6 Control options....23
7 Using a document in Mind Express....23
7.1 Opening a file....23
7.2 Opening a secure file....24
7.3 Editing a file....24
7.4 Saving a file....24
7.5 Opening a recently opened file....24
8 Updating Mind Express....25
8.1 Updating Mind Express....25
8.2 Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection....25
8.3 Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection....25
8.4 Changing the Mind Express license....25
9 Closing Mind Express....25

C Working with documents 27

1 The media library....28
1.1 The media library....28
1.2 Viewing the contents of the media library....28

1.3 Changing the media library view....28
1.4 Adding an image to the media library....29
1.5 Adding an image to the media library using Explorer....29
1.6 Adding a document to the media library....29
1.7 Adding a document to the media library through the media library....30
1.8 Adding a document to the media library using Explorer....30
1.9 Adding a document to the media library by importing it....31
1.10 Adding a document to the media library by double-clicking....31

2 Working with a document....32

2.1 Creating a new document....32
2.2 Creating a copy of a document....32
2.3 Creating your own template....33
2.4 Requesting the document settings....33
2.5 Editing document settings....33
2.6 Exporting a document....33
2.7 Show all document links....34
2.8 The document preference settings....34
2.9 The document size settings....36
2.10 Searching in a document (Mouse mode)....36
2.11 Searching in a document (Edit mode)....37
2.12 Importing files....37

3 Working with a page....38

3.1 Adding a new page....38
3.2 Copying and pasting a page....38
3.3 Duplicating a page....38
3.4 Navigating through the different pages....39
3.5 Deleting a page....39
3.6 Page settings....39
3.7 Inserting rows or columns on a page....39
3.8 Deleting a row or column on a page....40
3.9 The page background settings....40
3.10 Displaying the page as a pop-up window....40
3.11 The always go back page....41
3.12 Drawing user-defined cells on the page (freestyle)....41
3.13 Translating text on a page....42
3.14 Replacing a symbol on a page....42
3.15 Replacing the symbol set on a page....43
3.16 Printing a page....43

4 Editing a cell....44

4.1 Selecting cells....44
4.2 Editing a cell....44
4.3 Quick Fill a cell....45
4.4 Filling a cell using the toolbar....45
4.5 Filling the cell using the Edit dialog....46
4.6 Editing the symbol in a cell....46
4.7 Quick Edit the symbol in a cell....47
4.8 Adding multiple symbols to a cell....47
4.9 Editing a symbol....47
4.10 Adjusting the Bliss symbol view....49
4.11 Editing the label of a cell....49
4.12 Restoring the default label of a cell....49
4.13 Quick Edit the cell label....49
4.14 Clearing the cell label....49
4.15 Editing the text of a cell....49
4.16 Quick Edit the text of a cell....50
4.17 Working with styles....50
4.18 Quick Fill cells....54
4.19 Changing the size of a cell....55
4.20 Copying a cell....55
4.21 Copying a cell to multiple pages....56
4.22 Moving a cell....56
4.23 Switching around two cells....56

4.24 Editing the cell settings 56
4.25 Changing a cell 58
4.26 Pasting an image from the Internet into a cell 59
4.27 Pasting an image from a page into a cell 59
4.28 Adding an action at another level 59
4.29 Clearing the content of a cell (retaining the style) 60
4.30 Clearing the contents of a cell (Grid) 60
4.31 Clearing the contents of a cell (Freestyle) 60
4.32 Deleting a cell (Freestyle) 60
4.33 Editing the order (bring to front, send to back) of a cell (Freestyle) 61
4.34 Aligning cells (Freestyle) 61
4.35 Resizing cells to the same size (Freestyle) 61
4.36 Adding a scan word to a cell 61

5 Linking pages 62

5.1 Linking pages 62
5.2 Linking a page to another page 62
5.3 Linking a page to a new page 62

6 Linking documents 63

6.1 Opening a document from another document 63

7 Sound 63

7.1 Sound 63
7.2 Adding a sound to a cell 63

8 Message 63

8.1 A message 63
8.2 Configuring the message options 64
8.3 Creating a message box 64
8.4 Activating the message 65
8.5 Reading the full message out loud 65
8.6 Clearing the last character in a message 65
8.7 Completely clearing a message 65
8.8 Printing a message 65
8.9 Adding an action for message box 65
8.10 Saving the message in an empty cell 67
8.11 Saving the message to an existing cell 67
8.12 Saving the message as a file 67

9 Grammar 68

9.1 Grammar 68
9.2 Adding an action for grammar 68

10 Battery 69

10.1 Saying the battery level aloud 69
10.2 Displaying the battery level 69

11 Clock 69

11.1 Adding a clock 69

12 Date/time 69

12.1 Saying the date and time aloud 69

13 Address book 70

13.1 The address book 70
13.2 Adding a contact 70
13.3 Editing a contact 70
13.4 Deleting a contact 71
13.5 Creating an address book cell 71
13.6 Adding an action for address book 71

14 Agenda 72

14.1 Viewing the agenda 72
14.2 Adding an activity 72
14.3 Changing an activity 73
14.4 Deleting an activity 74
14.5 Adding an alarm 74
14.6 Changing an alarm 74

14.7 Deleting an alarm....75
14.8 The agenda background settings....75
14.9 Creating an agenda....75
14.10 Creating a time indicator cell....75
14.11 Creating an agenda cell....75
14.12 Adding an action for agenda....76

15 Camera....77

15.1 Camera....77
15.2 Creating a camera cell....77
15.3 Adding an action for camera....77

16 Slideshow....77

16.1 Creating a slideshow cell....77
16.2 Adding an action to slideshow....78

17 E-mail....78

17.1 E-mailing....78
17.2 E-mail in Mind Express settings....79
17.3 Auditory and visual feedback settings with e-mail....80
17.4 Sending an e-mail as an attachment....80
17.5 Creating an e-mail cell....80
17.6 Adding an action for e-mail....81
17.7 Add a subject to your email....82
17.8 Add an attachment to your email....82
17.9 Managing Inbox and deleted e-mails....82

18 Phonetic....83

18.1 Adding an action for phonetic....83

19 Eddy....83

19.1 What is the Eddy?....83
19.2 Bluetooth....83
19.3 Setting up the Eddy....83
19.4 Finding the Eddy....84
19.5 Connecting to the Eddy (using the menu)....84
19.6 Disconnecting from the Eddy (using the menu)....84
19.7 Clearing the text on the Eddy display....84

20 Working with levels....84

20.1 Levels....84
20.2 Going to another level....84

21 User....85

21.1 Adding an action for user....85
21.2 Moving cells on a freestyle page....86

22 GEWA....86

22.1 Environmental control....86
22.2 COM Port settings for GEWA....87
22.3 Recording a GEWA infrared code....87
22.4 Creating a backup file of GEWA infrared codes....87
22.5 Restoring a backup file of GEWA infrared codes....87
22.6 Transmitting a GEWA infrared code....88

23 Environmental control....88

23.1 Environmental control....88
23.2 The environmental control settings....88
23.3 Recording an infrared code....88
23.4 Teaching an infrared code (in Edit mode)....89
23.5 Creating a backup of the infrared codes....89
23.6 Restoring a backup of the infrared codes....89
23.7 Transferring backup files to different devices....90
23.8 Transmitting an infrared code....90

24 Internet....90

24.1 The Internet home page settings....90
24.2 Setting and using a black list....91
24.3 Setting and using a white list....91

24.4 Disabling the Internet filter 91
24.5 Internet favorites settings 91
24.6 Creating an Internet cell 92
24.7 Adding a navigate action for Internet 92
24.8 Adding a scroll action for Internet 93
24.9 Adding an element action for Internet 93
24.10 Adding a favorites action for Internet 94
24.11 Adding a type action for Internet 94

25 Log 94

25.1 Logs 94
25.2 Enable logging 95
25.3 Analyzing click behavior on the current page 95
25.4 Deleting the log file 95
25.5 Exporting the log file 95
25.6 Registering the cursor movements 96
25.7 Displaying the registered cursor movements (heatmap) 96
25.8 Creating a log cell 96
25.9 Adding an action for logs 96

26 Music And Video 97

26.1 Playing music 97
26.2 Adding an action for music 97
26.3 Creating a music playlist 98
26.4 Adding an action for a music playlist 98
26.5 Creating a video cell 99
26.6 Adding an action for video 99
26.7 Creating a video play list 99
26.8 Adding an action for a video playlist 100
26.9 Starting, pausing, stopping, fast-forwarding or rewinding the music or video 100

27 Comparing pages and cells 100

27.1 Comparing pages 100
27.2 Comparing cells 101

28 Calculator 102

28.1 Adding an action for calculator 102
28.2 Adding a calculator cell 102
28.3 Creating a calculator 103

29 Running a program 103

29.1 Running a program from Mind Express 104

30 Phone functions 104

30.1 Calls and SMS messages 104
30.2 The phone in Mind Express 104
30.3 Calling a telephone number 104
30.4 Answering or ending a call 104
30.5 Sending SMS messages 104
30.6 Restoring a backup of the text messages 105
30.7 Adding an action to call a contact 105
30.8 Adding an action to call a number entered 105
30.9 Adding an action to call a recipient 105
30.10 Adding an action to call a contact from the address book 105
30.11 Adding an action for phone 106
30.12 Adding an action for messages 106
30.13 Adding an action for calling 107
30.14 Adding an action to send an SMS message to a recipient 107
30.15 Adding an action to send a text message to a contact from the address book 107
30.16 Adding an action to send a message to a specific number 108
30.17 Adding an action to check for new messages 108
30.18 Creating a phone cell 108

31 Dynamic lists 108

31.1 Dynamic lists 108
31.2 Creating a dynamic list 109
31.3 Editing a dynamic list (method 1) 109

31.4 Editing a dynamic list (method 2) 109
31.5 Adding an item to a dynamic list 109
31.6 Adding a cell to a dynamic list 110
31.7 Adding multiple items to a dynamic list 110
31.8 Sorting items in a dynamic list 110
31.9 Deleting an item from a dynamic list 110
31.10 Adjusting the contents of a dynamic list 111
31.11 Adding a dynamic lists cell 111
31.12 Adding an action for dynamic lists 111

32 Volume 112

32.1 Adding an action for volume 112

33 Other actions 112

33.1 Setting a wait between 2 actions 112

34 Windows Control 113

34.1 Adding an action for Windows Control 113
34.2 Activate Windows Control 113
34.3 Changing the active window 114
34.4 Changing the Mind Express window 114
34.5 Activate the Mind Express window 115

35 Dynamic pages 115

35.1 Dynamic pages 115
35.2 Adding a dynamic page cell 116
35.3 Loading a page into a dynamic cell 116

36 Mobi 117

36.1 Adding an action for Mobi 117

37 Mobi 2 117

37.1 Adding an action for Mobi 2 117

38 Tellus 4 118

38.1 Adding an action for Tellus 4 118

39 Tellus 5 118

39.1 Adding an action for Tellus 5 118

40 Zingui 2 119

40.1 Adding an action for Zingui 2 119
40.2 Exporting the current document to Zingui or Smart 3 119
40.3 Importing a file from Zingui or Smart 120

41 Smart 3 120

41.1 Adding an action for Smart 3 120
41.2 Exporting the current document to Zingui or Smart 3 121
41.3 Importing a file from Zingui or Smart 121
41.4 Adding a Smart 3 camera cell 122
41.5 Adding a Smart 3 camera action 122

42 Prediction 122

42.1 Creating a prediction cell 122

43 Other cell types 122

43.1 Restoring a cell to a default cell 122
43.2 Creating a status cell 122
43.3 Creating a diagram cell 123

44 Scripts 124

44.1 Creating a script 124
44.2 Adding an action script 125

45 Eye control 125

45.1 Creating an eye control cell 125
45.2 Adding an action for eye control 125

D Mind Express settings 127

1 User settings 128

1.1 User settings 128

1.2 Adding a new user 128
1.3 Changing the user image 128
1.4 Editing the user name 129
1.5 Changing the user password 129
1.6 Editing the user start document 129
1.7 Deleting a user 130
1.8 Displaying the login window on startup 130
1.9 Logging in with a different user 130
1.10 Exporting user data 130
1.11 Importing user data 131

2 Setting the selection method 131

2.1 Selection settings 131
2.2 Mouse selection 131
2.3 Joystick selection 137
2.4 Scanning selection 141
2.5 Eye control 147

3 Activating/deactivating an add-on 157

4 The speech settings 157

5 The speech dictionary settings 157

5.1 The speech dictionary settings 157
5.2 Using a speech dictionary 158
5.3 Copying a speech dictionary 158
5.4 Adding a new speech dictionary 158
5.5 Deleting a speech dictionary 158
5.6 Changing the pronunciation of a word 158
5.7 Deleting a word from a speech dictionary 159

6 Setting the word prediction 159

6.1 Word prediction 159
6.2 Auto-learning with word prediction settings 159
6.3 Adding a new word prediction list 160
6.4 Copying a word prediction list 160
6.5 Deleting a word prediction list 160
6.6 Adding a word to the word prediction list 160
6.7 Deleting a word from the word prediction list 161
6.8 Editing the frequency of a word in the word prediction list 161
6.9 Creating a word pair 161
6.10 Editing the frequency of a word pair 162
6.11 Adding an abbreviation to the word prediction list 162
6.12 Editing an abbreviation in the word prediction list 163
6.13 Deleting an abbreviation from the word prediction list 163
6.14 Adding, changing or deleting a start word 163
6.15 Case-sensitive settings on word prediction 164
6.16 The minimal length settings for word prediction 164
6.17 Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction 164
6.18 Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction 164
6.19 Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction 165

7 Setting the sentence prediction 165

7.1 Sentence prediction 165
7.2 Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list 165
7.3 Adding a sentence to the word prediction list 166
7.4 Automatically add sentences to sentence prediction 166
7.5 Editing a sentence in the sentence prediction list 166
7.6 Deleting a sentence from the word prediction list 166

8 Enabling or disabling a symbol set 167

8.1 Enabling or disabling a symbol set 167

9 Setting the user-specific options 167

9.1 Configuring the start-up options 167
9.2 Displaying the document on a device display 168
9.3 Edit option settings 168
9.4 The record settings 168

9.5 Allow typing in a message....169
9.6 The software language settings....169
9.7 The time format settings....169
9.8 Setting the size unit....170
9.9 Auto save changes....170

E Appendices 171

1 The Bliss Editor....172
1.1 The Bliss Editor....172
1.2 Launching the Bliss Editor....172
1.3 Creating a new BLISS symbol....172
1.4 Grouping the elements of a BLISS symbol....173
1.5 Ungrouping a BLISS symbol....173
1.6 Deleting a BLISS symbol....173
2 The shared media library....174
3 Installing a shared media library....174
4 Playing MP4 files....174
5 Phonetic characters....175
5.1 Acapela....175
5.2 Realspeak....178
6 Keyboard shortcuts....181
7 Managing the web license....182
7.1 Creating an account....183
7.2 Managing your web license....183
7.3 Adding a user....183
7.4 Adding an administrator....183
7.5 Adding a group....183
7.6 Adding a class....183
7.7 Editing the user details....183
7.8 Editing the name of a group....184
7.9 Viewing the number of licenses and their validity period....184
7.10 Assigning multiple licenses to a user....184
7.11 Reserving a license for a user....184
7.12 Reserving licenses for a group....184
7.13 Time limit on using the software (user)....185
7.14 Time limit on using the software (group)....185
7.15 Assigning administrative rights to a user....185
7.16 Deleting the administrative rights of a user....185
7.17 Deleting a user or a group....185
7.18 Navigate....185
7.19 Signing out of web license management....186

Index 187

A Introduction

1 What is new in Mind Express 4.3.2?

To update Mind Express, see Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection on page 25 or Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection on page 25

To find out which Mind Express version you are using, see Checking the version and serial number of Mind Express on page 19.

1 Overview of the new features in Mind Express 4.3.2

- Style: the new **Adjust label size to fit cell** style option automatically reduces the label if the text does not completely fit in the cell. See Editing a style on page 52.
- Page: When adding a new page, you can enter the name and you can enter where you want the page to be inserted. See Adding a new page on page 38.
- Page: You can copy a page from one document to another document and preserve all the styles. You can enter the name of the new page, and you can enter where you want the page to be inserted. See Copying and pasting a page on page 38.
- Page: You can duplicate a page and preserve all the styles. You can enter the name of the new page, and you can enter where you want the page to be inserted. See Duplicating a page on page 38.
- Document: You can make a copy of the current document keeping all links intact. This feature is very useful for making a copy of a document without changing the original files. See Creating a copy of a document on page 32.
- Document: You can show all current document links or all linked documents in a dialog. See Show all document links on page 34.
- Document: You can now immediately select the document in the open a document action, instead of first choosing the folder and then the document. See Opening a document from another document on page 63.
- Auditory scanning: You can enable or disable auditory scanning via an action. See Adding an action for user on page 85.
- Image: When pasting an image, you can now enter a name for the image. The name entered is used as the label and for voice action. See Pasting an image from the Internet into a cell on page 59 and Pasting an image from a page into a cell on page 59.
- Shortcut key: You can use the shortcut keys to switch to Joystick mode (**Ctrl + F5**), Scanning mode (**Ctrl + F6**) or Eye Control mode (**Ctrl + F7**). See Control options on page 23.
- Shortcut key: You can use a shortcut key for style settings (**F9**). See Editing a style on page 52.
- Shortcut key: You can use the shortcut key to open the Media Library (**Ctrl + Shift + M**). See Viewing the contents of the media library on page 28.
- Script: You can use the button in the Script action to display the correct function in the script. A search function has been added to search in the script. See Adding an action script on page 125.
- Battery: In addition to the percentage, the battery level is now also shown visually using a picture. See Displaying the battery level on page 69.
- Camera: You can choose which camera to use if the device is fitted with multiple cameras. See Adding an action for camera on page 77.
- Symbol: You can now also change a symbol. See Editing a symbol on page 47.
- Music and video: Thumbnails are automatically created for music files and video files. See Creating a music playlist on page 98 and Creating a video play list on page 99.
- Eye Control: You can reduce the calibration area in Tobii and Eyetech up to 50% for users who have difficulty with the far-spaced calibration points. Reducing the calibration area brings all the calibration points closer together. See Selecting and calibrating the type of eye control on page 148.

2 What is new in Mind Express 4.3.3?

To update Mind Express, see Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection on page 25 or Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection on page 25

To find out which Mind Express version you are using, see Checking the version and serial number of Mind Express on page 19.

2 Overview of the new features in Mind Express 4.3.3

- Visualize: You can visualize the word while reading the note. See Configuring the message options on page 64 and The document preference settings on page 34.
- External zoom: You can enable or disable external zoom via an action. See Adding an action for user on page 85.
- Style: You can set the shape of a cell as a folder. See Editing a style on page 52.
- Style: You can set the shape of the page indicator as a folder. See Editing a style on page 52.
- Page: When a page appears as a pop-up window, the background is shown under a gray transparent layer to avoid confusion with the pop-up window. See Displaying the page as a pop-up window on page 40.
- Home document: You can create a button in the menu bar which allows you to return to the first page of the specified document. This new feature means you don't have to create a cell to return to the Home document. See Configuring the start-up options on page 167.
- Connecting documents: you can choose the **Open document** action to go to the Home document. Now you only need to adjust the home document if any changes are made and you don't need to **Open document** adjust all the actions. See Opening a document from another document on page 63.

- Dynamic lists: You can adjust the contents of a dynamic list by enabling or disabling certain items in the dynamic list. This allows you to make the dynamic list more limited or simpler, more extensive or more difficult. See Adjusting the contents of a dynamic list on page 111.

3 What is new in Mind Express 4.3.4?

To update Mind Express, see Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection on page 25 or Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection on page 25

To find out which Mind Express version you are using, see Checking the version and serial number of Mind Express on page 19.

3 Overview of the new features in Mind Express 4.3.4

- install Mind Express and use a web license. See Installing Mind Express (default setup) on page 16 and Installing Mind Express (custom setup) on page 17.
- Change the Mind Express license security. See Changing the security on Mind Express on page 22.
- Internet: You can zoom to or zoom out of a web page. You can restore the web page to 100%. See Adding a scroll action for Internet on page 93.
- Calculator: You can add the ? action to read the entire operation aloud. See Adding an action for calculator on page 102 and Creating a calculator on page 103.
- Label: You can add multiple texts via a text box to use as a label for a cell. See Editing the label of a cell on page 49.
- Note: You can set whether the note starts to the left, in the center or on the right of the note area. See Creating a message box on page 64.
- Edit mode: If you press **F2** in Edit mode, you will return to the last used mode. See Editing a file on page 24.
- Secure files: You can now try out protected files after you have entered the activation code. See Opening a secure file on page 24.
- Visualize: You can now color the text you are reading while reading a note. See Configuring the message options on page 64 and The document preference settings on page 34.
- Edit mode: If you exit Edit mode in a Smart or a Zingui, then the current document is automatically saved. See Editing a file on page 24.
- Edit mode: If you make a quick recording for a Smart or a Zingui then the current document is automatically saved. See The record settings on page 168.
- User data: Import and export of user data has been moved to **File** > **Backup**. See Exporting user data on page 130 and Importing user data on page 131.
- Style: You can now also set the shape of a cell as a speech bubble, thought bubble, hexagon, octagon, 12-pointed star. See Editing a style on page 52.
- Visualize: The text is now also visualized while reading a note, using the **Message box** > **Read sentence** action and the **Message box** > **Read word** action.
- Scan groups: You can create your own scan group. See Scan group settings on page 147. The option to use scan groups is selected by default. See The scanning method settings on page 144.
- Eye control: The **Show distance** has been added for the Tobii. This option helps users to take the ideal camera position. See Selecting and calibrating the type of eye control on page 148.

4 What is new in Mind Express 4.4?

To update Mind Express, see Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection on page 25 or Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection on page 25

To find out which Mind Express version you are using, see Checking the version and serial number of Mind Express on page 19.

4 Overview of the new features in Mind Express 4.4

- Cell: You can add an animated gif to a cell. By default, the animated gif is played once-only when you click the cell.
- Action: Actions have been added to repeatedly play, stop or pause the animated gif. See Changing a cell on page 58.
- Label: An action has been added that allows you to scroll in a cell label, if the label is too large for the cell. See Changing a cell on page 58.
- Action: An action has been added which does not allow any further actions until the sound has stopped. See Setting a wait between 2 actions on page 112.
- Scanning: The **Automatic first step** option has been added when scanning with 2 switches. This option ensures that scanning always starts by immediately marking the first cell. By disabling this option, you first need to press the step switch to mark the first cell. See Preference settings on scanning on page 145.
- Scanning: The **Post advance time** option has been added when scanning with 2 switches. After advancing with a switch, you cannot advance again during the post selection time. You can use this option to avoid quick unintentional successive steps. See Timing settings on scanning on page 146.
- Symbols: PCS High Contrast and PCS Thin Line symbols are now available. If you have a valid PCS license, you can start using these symbols immediately. The symbol sets can be downloaded from http://www.mindexpress.be/symbolsets/pcs/hcand http://www.mindexpress.be/symbolsets/pcs/tl. To enable or disable the symbol sets, see Enabling or disabling a symbol set on page 167.

- Cell: You can search for the cell ID by placing `id:` in front of the search term. See Searching in a document (Mouse mode) on page 36 and Searching in a document (Edit mode) on page 37.
- Eye control: When correcting the calibration, Tobii eye control now checks whether the latest Mind Express calibration is being used for the camera. See Improving the calibration (only in Tobii) on page 156.

5 License Agreement

License Agreement

Please read this license agreement carefully before you install Mind Express. If you have any objections to this License Agreement, you can return the complete Mind Express package to Jabbla. Jabbla grants you the right to use this copy of Mind Express on one single computer. You are allowed to use one copy of this software for backup. The Mind Express software is the property of Jabbla and is protected under the author legislation and international copyright law.

Copyright

Trademarks

- The "Bliss" symbols used in this program are derived from the symbols described in the publication "Semantography", originally copyrighted by C.K. Bliss 1949. Reviewed and approved in 1996 by inspectors from BCI.
- SymbolStix T™ © N2Y, Inc. The library of characters/logo symbols in the SymbolStix symbol set is included in this software free of charge, but can only be used for communication purposes and may not be sold, copied or otherwise commercialized for any form of profit.
- The Picture Communication Symbols ©1991-1998 Mayer-Johnson Co., USA. All rights reserved worldwide.
- The Widgit Symbols ©Widgit Software Ltd 1993-1999.
- Beta prints © Beta VZW.
- Picto/Visitaal icons ©Visitaal icons.
- Picture This © Silver Lining Multimedia, Inc.
- Mind Express™ is a trademark of Jabbla.

6 Introduction

Mind Express is a computer program that is easy to use and that contains everything a speech therapist needs to create communication grids and exercises. A wide variety of symbols, images, text to voice messages, music and sounds can be used to create communication grids.

Thanks to the Mind Express, voice messages can be created by selecting images and/or symbols. Mind Express also has a built-in grammar module which, among other things, automatically conjugates verbs.

There is also a wide range of symbols and icons available. These can be used to make communication cards, games, exercises or other applications. You can also add your own drawings, photos or new symbols.

Users can operate Mind Express:

- To communicate
- To expand their vocabulary
- To practice their academic skills such as reading, spelling, arithmetics, ...
- To develop knowledge and language skills
- As an environmental control: everything that uses infrared, can be controlled
- For entertainment (games, listen to music, watch videos, ...)
- To plan
- To send emails, text messages and to take photos, ...

Supervisors can use Mind Express:

- To create communication grids
- To create educational and/or therapeutic exercises

Mind Express is accessible through:

- touch screen
- mouse
- trackball
- Head control
- eye control
- Scanning with 1 or 2 switches.

By choosing the correct accessibility method, users can work independently, which often improves their self-image and stimulates their creativity and development.

Mind Express is available in 3 versions:

- Mind Express Player
- Mind Express Print
- Mind Express (full version)

You can use Mind Express Player to open, import, use, and print communication grids. You cannot create or edit communication grids in Mind Express Player. To do this, you need to have the full version of Mind Express.

You can use Mind Express Print to create, import, and print communication grids. You can use your favorite symbol sets and images to create ready-to-print communication grids. In Mind Express Print you cannot carry out any actions on the screen and add-ons such as calendar, e-mail, ... are not available. To do this, you need to have the full version of Mind Express.

With the full version of Mind Express you have all the program's functionalities.

7 Overview of the Mind Express versions

Functionality	Mind Express Print	Mind Express Player	Mind Express
Plug-ins (e-mail, calendar, environmental control, ...)		X	X
Edit the symbol, label of a cell	X		X
Edit the actions in a cell			X
Edit a specific type of cell. For example: e-mail cell, calendar cell, music cell, ...			X
Edit dynamic lists			X
Edit scripts			X
Copy, paste, undo, redo	X		X
Translate text or symbol	X		X
Edit page setup	X		X
Edit style settings	X		X
Add, copy and delete pages	X		X
Quick recording			X
Edit scan word for a cell			X
Perform an action		X	X
Creating a new document	X		X
Open a document	X	X	X
Save a document	X	X	X
Mouse selection		X	X
Joystick selection		X	X
Scanning selection		X	X
Adjust document preferences			X
Supports multiple users		X	X
Text-to-speech		X	X
Word and sentence prediction		X	X
Print message		X	X
Import export for Zingui / Smart			X
Import / export user details		X	X
Import / export Grid2 files			X
Import / export style sets	X		X
Find	X		X

Functionality	Mind Express Print	Mind Express Player	Mind Express
The media library: templates	X		X
The media library: sound		X	X
The media library: music and video		X	X
Protect menu with password.		X	X
Start with a chosen document.		X	X
Start without menu bar or title bar		X	X

8 Target Group

Mind Express is designed for both young children and adolescents, and adults with:

- Speech disorders (such as: dysarthria in cerebral palsy, dyspraxia)
- Language problems (such as: aphasia, dysphasia)
- A communication disorder (such as: people with autism who do not talk or only to a very limited degree)
- A mental disability
- A progressive disorder (such as:ALS, MS, Parkinson's disease, degenerative muscle disease ...)
- ...

B Getting started with Mind Express

1 Installing Mind Express

1.1 Installing Mind Express

To ensure an efficient use of Mind Express, your device must meet a number of minimum system requirements.

The minimum requirements for Mind Express are:

- Windows 7 or higher
- 256 MB of RAM or more
- 1 GB of free disk space
- DVD drive

You can choose:

- The default setup (recommended). All symbol sets, sample files and voices are installed in the default location.
- A custom setup. You can choose the symbol sets, sample files, voices you want to install and the location for installing the files.

NOTE
If the computer or device does not have a DVD player, copy the contents of the DVD onto a USB stick. Delete the file democd.ini and launch the setup file from the USB stick.

TIP
If you are working with a dongle, you can install Mind Express on different devices and insert the dongle into the USB port of the device that you want to use Mind Express on.

See also

Installing Mind Express (default setup) on page 16
Installing Mind Express (custom setup) on page 17

1.2 Installing Mind Express (default setup)

1. Insert the DVD of Mind Express in the DVD drive of your computer.

   NOTE
   If the installation does not start up automatically, you can start the setup.exe file from the DVD.

2. The **User account control** dialog may appear (depending on the computer's security level). Click **Yes**.
3. Choose **Default setup**.
   This is the recommended method for installing the program.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Specify if you want to use a HASP dongle:
   - **Yes**
   - **No**
6. Click **Next**.
7. Choose one of the following options, depending on the Mind Express version you have purchased:

Version	Explanation
Fixed license (software key)	You must activate the license once-only. The license is stored on this device. You do not need an Internet connection to launch Mind Express.
Web license	You must create an account. The license is stored on the web and is regularly validated via the Internet connection. You can install Mind Express on multiple devices and use it by signing in to your account.

8. Click **Next**.
9. Select the language you want to use for Mind Express.
10. Click **Next**.
11. As required, select the additional tasks you want performed during the installation.
    - **Create a desktop shortcut**, this option is selected by default to ensure a Mind Express icon is placed on the desktop so you can quickly start up the program.
    - **Run Mind Express when Windows starts**, when Windows starts, Mind Express is launched and can be used immediately.
    - **Overwrite existing files**, do NOT select this option if you already have Mind Express and you want to save your files.
    - **Install Zingui/Smart connection software (ActiveSync/Mobile Device Center)**, select this option if you have a Zingui and/or a Smart.
12. Click **Next**.
13. Click **Install**.
    The installation is started up and may take some time.
14. As required, deselect the **Open Mind Express website** option if you do not wish to visit the website.

15. Click **Finish**.
16. Do one of the following:
    - If your version requires a HASP dongle, insert it into the USB port of your computer.
    - If your version has a fixed license, activate the fixed license. See Activating the fixed Mind Express license on page 18.
    - If your version has a web license, create an account. See Creating an account on page 183.

See also

Installing Mind Express (custom setup) on page 17

1.3 Installing Mind Express (custom setup)

1. Insert the DVD of Mind Express in the DVD drive of your computer.

   NOTE
   If the installation does not start up automatically, you can start the setup.exe file from the DVD.

2. The **User account control** dialog may appear (depending on the computer's security level). Click **Yes**.
3. Choose **Custom installation**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Specify if you want to use a dongle:
    - **Yes**
    - **No**
6. Click **Next**.
7. Choose one of the following options, depending on the Mind Express version you have purchased:

Version	Explanation
Fixed license (software key)	You must activate the license once-only. The license is stored on this device. You do not need an Internet connection to launch Mind Express.
Web license	You must create an account. The license is stored on the web and is regularly validated via the Internet connection. You can install Mind Express on multiple devices and use it by signing in to your account.

8. Click **Next**.
9. Select the language you want to use for Mind Express.
10. Click **Next**.
11. Deselect the symbol sets you do NOT want to use in Mind Express.
12. Click **Next**.
13. Select the languages for the example files.
14. Click **Next**.
15. Deselect the voices you do NOT want to use in Mind Express.
16. Click **Next**.
17. Click **Browse...** as required, to select the folder you want to install Mind Express to. Select the folder and click **OK**.
18. Click **Next**.
19. As required, select the additional tasks you want performed during the installation.
    - **Create a desktop shortcut**, this option is selected by default to ensure a Mind Express icon is placed on the desktop so you can quickly start up the program.
    - **Run Mind Express when Windows starts**, when Windows starts, Mind Express is launched and can be used immediately.
    - **Overwrite existing files**, do NOT select this option if you already have Mind Express and you want to save your files.
    - **Install Zingui/Smart connection software (ActiveSync/Mobile Device Center)**, select this option if you have a Zingui and/or a Smart.
20. Click **Next**.
    A list is displayed of the language, symbol sets, language of the sample files, the destination file and the additional tasks.
21. Click **Next**.
22. Click **Install**.
    The installation is started up and may take some time.
23. As required, deselect the **Open Mind Express website** option if you do not wish to visit the website.
24. Click **Finish**.
25. Do one of the following:
    - If your version requires a HASP dongle, insert it into the USB port of your computer.
    - If your version has a fixed license, activate the fixed license. See Activating the fixed Mind Express license on page 18.
    - If your version has a web license, create an account. See Creating an account on page 183.

See also

Installing Mind Express (default setup) on page 16

1.4 Activating the fixed Mind Express license

If you are NOT using a web license or a HASP dongle, you will need to activate the Mind Express license in the following cases:

- If you have purchased a fixed Mind Express license and completed the installation.
- If the demo version of Mind Express has expired and you have purchased a Mind Express license.
- If the fixed Mind Express license has been customized, in which case the fixed license must first be removed and then reactivated. For example if you have purchased additional Mind Express components.

The Mind Express license can be activated as follows:

- Automatically, via the Internet.
- by requesting an activation code by e-mail or by telephone and entering the code.

See also

Removing the fixed Mind Express license on page 20
Activating the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet on page 19
Activating the fixed Mind Express license using an activation code on page 18

1.5 Requesting the Mind Express activation code by telephone and activating the fixed license

TIP

It is recommended to activate the fixed license for Mind Express automatically over the Internet. If this is not possible, you can opt for the following procedure.

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Click **Activate**.
3. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select the **I wish to request my activation code by telephone or I already have an activation code** option.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Please call your dealer or Jabbla and quote the serial number and PC code, which will appear in the **Licence manager - Activation** dialog.
8. In the **Activation code** field, enter the code you have received.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Click **Finish**.

See also

Requesting the Mind Express activation code by e-mail and activating the fixed license on page 18

1.6 Requesting the Mind Express activation code by e-mail and activating the fixed license

TIP

It is recommended to activate the fixed license for Mind Express automatically over the Internet. If this is not possible, you can opt for the following procedure.

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Click **Activate**.
3. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select the option **I wish to request my activation code by e-mail**
6. Click **Next**.
7. Send an e-mail to unlock@jabbla.com quoting the serial number and the PC code, which will appear in the **Licence manager - End** dialog.
8. Click **Finish**.
9. After you have received the e-mail with the activation code, follow the Activating the fixed Mind Express license using an activation code on page 18 procedure

See also

Requesting the Mind Express activation code by telephone and activating the fixed license on page 18

1.7 Activating the fixed Mind Express license using an activation code

TIP
It is recommended to activate the fixed license for Mind Express automatically over the Internet. If this is not possible, you can opt for the following procedure.

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Click **Activate**.
3. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select the **I wish to request my activation code by telephone or I already have an activation code** option.
6. Click **Next**.
7. In the **Activation code** field, enter the code you have received.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Click **Finish**.

See also

Activating the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet on page 19

1.8 Activating the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Click **Activate**.
3. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select the option **I wish to automatically activate this software by means of the internet (recommended)**
6. Click **Next**.
   Mind Express is activated on the computer
7. Click **Finish**.

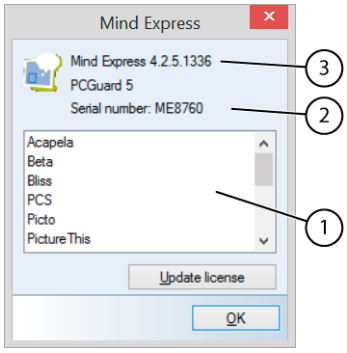
See also

Activating the fixed Mind Express license using an activation code on page 18

1.9 Checking the version and serial number of Mind Express

In your dealings with the support department, you will be asked to supply the version and/or serial number of Mind Express on your device.

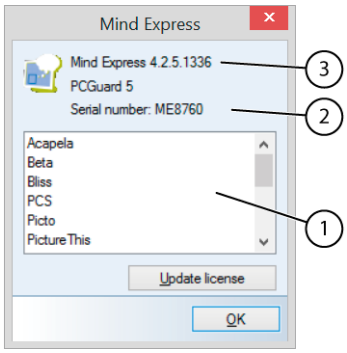
Choose **Help** > **License Info...**.



The **Mind Express** dialog shows the version number (3) and the Mind Express serial number (2).

1.10 Showing the use of Mind Express symbol sets

1. Choose **Help** > **License Info...**.



The **Mind Express** dialog shows the version number (3) and the Mind Express serial number (2).

2. In the **Mind Express** dialog you will find the symbol sets in the window (1), with the following indicators:
   - Black text: symbol set and license present
   - Light gray text: no license for the symbol set
   - Dark gray with asterisk (*):
     - Symbol set not present
     - symbol set not selected in the menu **Tools** > **Symbol sets...**
     - Symbol set does not exist in the specified language

See also

Enabling or disabling a symbol set on page 167

1.11 Removing the fixed Mind Express license

In the following cases, you will need to remove the fixed Mind Express license:

- If you want to use Mind Express on another computer.
- If the fixed Mind Express license has been customized, in which case the fixed license must first be removed and then reactivated. For example if you have purchased additional Mind Express components.

The fixed Mind Express license can be removed as follows:

- Automatically, via the Internet.
- By requesting a removal code by e-mail or by telephone and entering the code.

See also

Activating the fixed Mind Express license on page 18
Deleting the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet on page 20
Activating the fixed Mind Express license using a removal code on page 21

1.12 Deleting the fixed Mind Express license over the Internet

In the following cases, you will need to remove the fixed Mind Express license:

- If you want to use Mind Express on another computer.
- If you want to change the fixed Mind Express license. For example if you have purchased additional Mind Express components.

1. Choose **Help** > **License Info...**.
2. Click **Update license**.
3. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select **I wish to automatically remove this license by means of the internet (recommended)**
6. Click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish**.
   The fixed license has been removed from the computer and can be used on another computer, or you can install the updated fixed license on the current computer.

1.13 Requesting the Mind Express removal code by telephone and deleting the fixed license

TIP

It is recommended to delete the fixed license for Mind Express automatically over the Internet. If this is not possible, you can opt for the following procedure.

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Choose **Help** > **License Info...**.

3. Click **Update license**.
4. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the **I wish to request my removal code by telephone or I already have a removal code** option.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Please call your dealer or Jabbla and quote the serial number and PC code, which will appear in the **Licence manager - Remove Licence** dialog.
9. In the **Removal Code** field, enter the code you have received.
10. Click **Next**.
11. Click **Finish**.

See also

Requesting the Mind Express removal code by e-mail on page 21

1.14 Requesting the Mind Express removal code by e-mail

TIP

It is recommended to delete the license for Mind Express automatically over the Internet. If this is not possible, you can opt for the following procedure.

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Choose **Help** > **License Info...**.
3. Click **Update license**.
4. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the option **I wish to request my removal code by e-mail**
7. Click **Next**.
8. Send an e-mail to unlock@jabbla.com quoting the serial number and the PC code, which will appear in the **Licence manager - End** dialog.
9. Click **Finish**.
10. To enter the removal code received, see Activating the fixed Mind Express license using a removal code on page 21.

See also

Requesting the Mind Express removal code by telephone and deleting the fixed license on page 20

1.15 Activating the fixed Mind Express license using a removal code

TIP

It is recommended to delete the fixed license for Mind Express automatically over the Internet. If this is not possible, you can opt for the following procedure.

1. Start up Mind Express.
2. Choose **Help** > **License Info...**.
3. Click **Update license**.
4. Enter the serial number. The serial number can be found on the registration card.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the **I wish to request my removal code by telephone or I already have a removal code** option.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In the **Removal Code** field, enter the code you have received.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Click **Finish**.
11. Click **Finish**.
    The fixed license has been removed from the computer and can be used on another computer, or you can install the updated fixed license on the current computer.

2 Starting up Mind Express

Do one of the following:

- Double-click on the icon on the desktop.
- Windows 8: Go to **Start screen**, type Mind Express and click the **Mind Express** tile.
- Older Windows versions: Go to **All Programs** > **Mind Express 4** > **Mind Express**.

See also

The Mind Express window on page 22
Closing Mind Express on page 25

3 Starting Mind Express for the first time with a web license

1. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click on the icon on the desktop.
   - From Windows 8: Go to **Start screen**, type Mind Express and click **Mind Express**.
   - Older Windows versions: Go to **All Programs** > **Mind Express 4** > **Mind Express**.

   The login window appears.
2. Enter your user name and password.
3. Select the options below to log in automatically next time and to launch Mind Express:
   - **Remember me**
   - **Do not show this window**

   This requires an Internet connection!

4 Changing the security on Mind Express

You can change your license's security.

For example: You have installed a demo version. So you automatically have a fixed license. You can switch to a Web license or security to a security key using a HASP dongle.

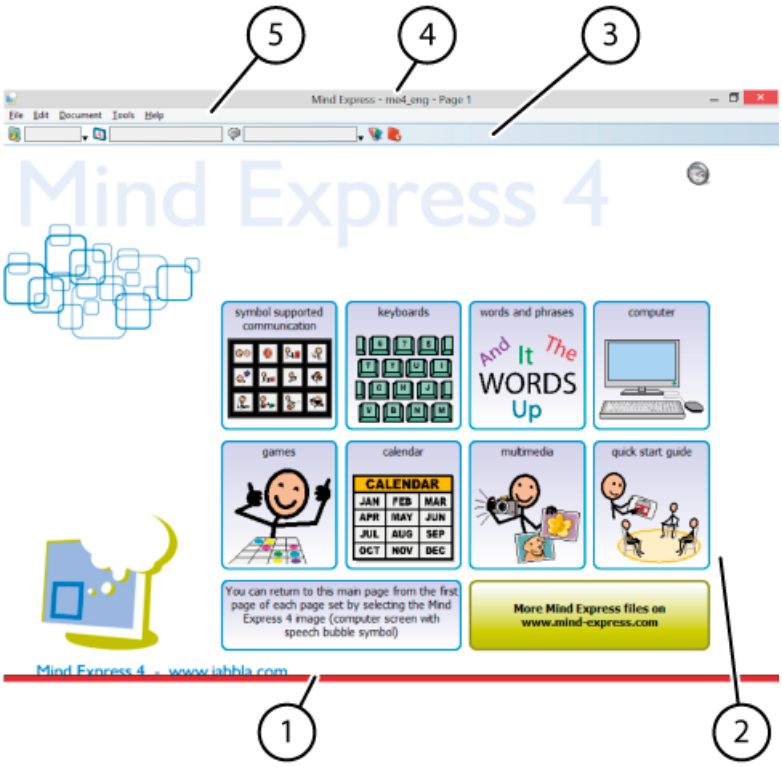
1. Go to the folder containing the Mind Express installation files.
   Example: `C:\Program Files (x86)\Mind Express 4`
2. Open the `SetProtection.exe` file.
3. Select **Mind Express** from the **Product** drop-down list.
4. From the **Security** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Fixed license / demo (PCGuard)	You must activate the license once-only. The license is stored on your device. You do not need an Internet connection to launch Mind Express.
Hardware key (Hasp)	Security is activated by connecting a security key (HASP dongle) to the USB port of your device.
Web license	You must create an account. The license is stored on the web and is regularly validated via the Internet connection. You can install Mind Express on multiple devices and use it by signing in to your account.

   The current security is marked with *.
5. Click **OK**.

5 The Mind Express window

The Mind Express window consists of five areas. Depending on the mode you are working in, some or all of these areas are visible.



N°	Area	Explanation
1	Colored bar	Indicates that Edit mode is active. The colored bar only appears if the **Edit mode indicator** option is checked in the **Tools** > **Options...** menu.
2	Communication grid	Users of Mind Express usually only get to see this area.
3	Toolbar	This toolbar only appears in Edit mode and is used to edit the cells quickly.
4	Title bar	The title bar shows the name of the program (**Mind Express**), the name of the document (for example: **me4_eng**), and the name of the page (for example: Page 1).
5	Menu bar	The menu bar gives you access to the **File**, **Edit**, **Document**, **Tools** and **Help** menus.

6 Control options

You can choose how to control Mind Express. You can use a mouse, joystick, switch (scanning) or eye control.

From the **Edit** menu select one of the following control options:

- **Mouse**
- **Joystick** or **Ctrl + F5**
- **Scanning** or **Ctrl + F6**
- **Eye tracking** or **Ctrl + F7**

7 Using a document in Mind Express

7.1 Opening a file

1. Choose **File** > **Open...**.
   The media library is opened.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select the document and click **Open**.
   - Double-click on the document.

See also

Opening a recently opened file on page 24
Saving a file on page 24

7.2 Opening a secure file

Some documents are protected. You need an activation code to open them. For example: Podd, Mycore, Carla, TwoSwitches, ... You can request an activation code, or if you already have an activation code, you can enter it immediately. To do this, your device must have an Internet connection.

Some protected documents have a trial period. During this trial period you can use the protected document without the need to enter an activation code.

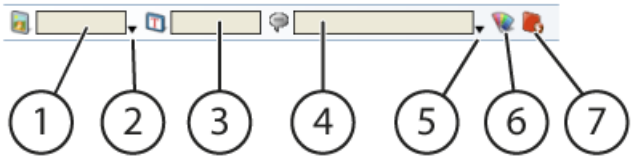
1. Choose **File** > **Open...**.
   The media library is opened.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select the document and click **Open**.
   - Double-click on the document.
3. Enter the activation code **Activation code:** you were given.
   You can use some documents free of charge for a specific trial period. The **Try the document now for free (days left)** button appears at the bottom. Press the button and the document is opened.
4. Click **OK**.

7.3 Editing a file

To edit a file, page or cell, you need to activate Edit mode.

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode**.
   - Press **F2**.

   The **Edit** toolbar appears at the top. The document can be edited.



N°	Description
1	Symbol name
2	Opens the symbol window
3	Symbol label
4	Symbol action (or text)
5	Opens the action window
6	To select the style.
7	To activate/deactivate drawing of cells. Only available in Freestyle.

2. To exit Edit mode, complete one of the following actions:
   - Select **Edit** and choose: **Mouse**, **Joystick**, **Scanning** or **Eye tracking** mode.
   - Press **F2**. Mind Express will return to the last selected mode.

NOTE
In Smart and Zingui the current document is saved automatically after exiting Edit mode.

7.4 Saving a file

Do one of the following:

- Choose **File** > **Save**
- Press **Ctrl + S**.

See also

Opening a file on page 23

7.5 Opening a recently opened file

1. Choose **File**.
   The **File** menu shows a list with the last 5 files that were recently opened.
2. Click on the file in the list that you want to open.

See also

Opening a file on page 23

8 Updating Mind Express

8.1 Updating Mind Express

It is recommended that you always keep Mind Express up-to-date. Existing documents, images, sounds or voices are always saved during an update. There are 2 ways to update:

- You can automatically have Mind Express check for a new update and install it. This is the recommended method of updating.
- If your device does not have Internet access, you can also update Mind Express manually.

See also

Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection on page 25
Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection on page 25
Changing the Mind Express license on page 25

8.2 Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection

It is recommended that you always keep Mind Express up-to-date. Existing documents, images, sounds or voices are always saved during an update. In Mind Express you can check for a new update and install it.

1. Go to **Help** > **Check for updates...**.
2. Depending on the message that appears, complete one of the following actions:

Message	Action
No updates were found.	Click **OK** and you can continue working in Mind Express.
The Update dialog appears with an explanation about the update.	Click **Update** and continue with the next step.

3. Click **OK** in the **Update** dialog.
4. Close Mind Express.
   The update is being installed.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Reboot Mind Express.

See also

Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection on page 25

8.3 Updating Mind Express without an Internet connection

If your device does not have an Internet connection, you need to use a computer that does have an Internet connection to download the update and transfer it to the device that does not have an Internet connection.

1. On the computer that does have an Internet connection, go to the website of Mind Express (www.mindexpress.be)
2. Download the most recent update.
3. Copy the file to a USB stick.
4. Insert the USB stick into the device that does not have an Internet connection. As required, use the supplied USB cable.
5. Run the update from the USB stick.
6. Perform the steps as described in:
   - Installing Mind Express (default setup) on page 16
   - Installing Mind Express (custom setup) on page 17

See also

Updating Mind Express using an Internet connection on page 25

8.4 Changing the Mind Express license

The Mind Express license can be changed, after purchasing additional Mind Express items. For example: additional languages, symbol sets, voices.

1. To delete the license, see Removing the fixed Mind Express license on page 20.
2. To reactivate the license, see Activating the fixed Mind Express license on page 18.

9 Closing Mind Express

Go to **File** > **Exit**.
If any changes were made to the document, a message will appear prompting you to save the changes.

See also

Starting up Mind Express on page 21

C Working with documents

1 The media library

1.1 The media library

The media library is the place where all the necessary communication grid files are stored. The only thing you will not find here are the symbol databases. The Mind Express files are always saved in the **Documents** folder.

TIP
Be sure to create your own personal subdivision, to make it easy to find the files.

The Mind Express media library contains the following folders:

Folder	Explanation
Documents	All the Mind Express files are saved here.
Templates	All the Mind Express templates are saved here.
Images	All the pictures are saved here. Possible extensions are: bmp, jpg, jpeg, gif, png, wmf, emf
Sounds	All the sounds are saved here. Only a wav extension can be used.
Music Video	All the music and video clips are saved here. Possible extensions are: wmv, mpg, mpeg, avi, mp4, mov, mkv, mp3, aif, CDA, WAV, WMA. Playlists can have the extensions: pls and m3u

NOTE
Advanced users can find the media library files in the folder `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\MediaLib`.

CAUTION
It is easier for users to work with the media library via Mind Express!

See also

Adding a document to the media library on page 29
Viewing the contents of the media library on page 28
Changing the media library view on page 28
Adding an image to the media library on page 29

1.2 Viewing the contents of the media library

1. Choose **File** > **Media library...** (**Ctrl** + **Shift** + **M**).
2. Choose one of the following libraries in the top left of the screen:
   - **Documents**
   - **Templates**
   - **Images**
   - **Sounds**
   - **Music Video**
3. View the contents of the library.
4. To open a file, double-click on the folder.
5. View the contents of the folder.

TIP
Use the breadcrumb trail at the top of the screen to go back to the top folder.

1.3 Changing the media library view

When you open a folder or library, you can change the view of the files in the file list. There are 3 possible views for the file list:

- Icons, this view shows a thumbnail of the images.
- List, this view shows a list of the files.
- Details, in this view the date is shown next to the folder or file.

1. Open the media library.
2. Click **Change view**.

3. Repeat step 2 until you have the desired view.

1.4 Adding an image to the media library

You only need to add an image if you want to transfer images separately. If you import a Mind Express document, then all the images are automatically imported as well.

Only the following file types can be imported:

- bmp (Bitmap)
- jpg, jpeg (Joint Photographic Expert Group)
- gif (Graphics Interchange Format)
- png (Portable Network Graphics)
- wmf (Windows Metafile)
- emf (Extended Windows Metafile)

1. Choose **File** > **Media library...** (**Ctrl** + **Shift** + **M**).
2. In the top left, choose the **Images** library.
3. From the file list, select the folder where you want to store the images.
4. From the **Tasks** options group, click **Add/import item(s)**.
5. Select the image files in the **Open** dialog.

NOTE
*In the bottom left of the **Open** dialog the **Resize images after import** option has been selected. Leave this option enabled, unless you want to import the background images!*

6. Click **Open**.

See also
Adding an image to the media library using Explorer on page 29

1.5 Adding an image to the media library using Explorer

You only need to add an image if you want to transfer images separately. If you import a Mind Express document, then all the images are automatically imported as well.

The following file types can be added:

- bmp (Bitmap)
- jpg, jpeg (Joint Photographic Expert Group)
- gif (Graphics Interchange Format)
- png (Portable Network Graphics)
- wmf (Windows Metafile)
- emf (Extended Windows Metafile)

You can add image files to the media library by dragging and dropping one or multiple image files from Explorer into the media library.

NOTE
*Image files that are dragged to the **Images** library, are automatically resized!*

1. Resize the **Mind Express** window.
2. Choose **File** > **Media library...** (**Ctrl** + **Shift** + **M**).
3. In the top left, choose the **Images** library.
4. From the file list, select the folder you want to drag the images to.
5. Open Explorer.
6. Resize the Explorer window and position it next to the dialog of the media library.
7. In Explorer, select the files you want to add to the media library.
8. Drag the selection to the file list in the media library.

See also
Adding an image to the media library on page 29

1.6 Adding a document to the media library

A document can be added to the media library in the following ways:

- Via Add/Imports in the media library
- By dragging and dropping in Explorer

- By using Import
- By double-clicking

See also

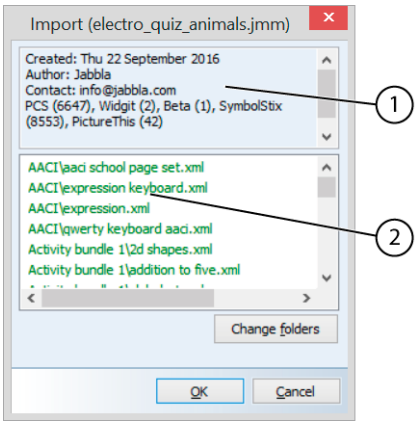
Adding a document to the media library through the media library on page 30
Adding a document to the media library using Explorer on page 30
Adding a document to the media library by importing it on page 31
Adding a document to the media library by double-clicking on page 31

1.7 Adding a document to the media library through the media library

1. Choose **File** > **Media library...** (**Ctrl** + **Shift** + **M**).
2. In the top left, choose the **Documents** library.
3. From the file list, select the folder you want to save the documents to.
4. From the **Tasks** options group, click **Add/import item(s)**.
5. In Explorer, choose the files you want to add to the media library.

   NOTE
   *Only documents of the *.jmm, *.bls or *.zip type can be added.*

6. Click **Open**.



   General information about the document is displayed at the top (1) in the **Import** dialog. At the bottom (2) a list of the files to be imported is displayed. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green.

7. If you wish to change the location of the files to be imported, click **Change folders**, change the location of the imported documents, pictures, sounds, music and video and click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to start importing.
   All files that are linked to the document are imported. In the **Import** dialog you will see an overview of the imported files. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green.
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a document to the media library by importing it on page 31
Adding a document to the media library by double-clicking on page 31

1.8 Adding a document to the media library using Explorer

If you add a Mind Express document to the media library, all linked files are automatically included in the import.

Only the following file types can be added:

- ymm (Mind Express 4 file)
- zip (a jmm file that is renamed a zip file by the browser)
- bls (Mind Express 3 file)

You can add one or more documents to the media library by dragging and dropping one or multiple documents from Explorer into the media library.

1. Resize the Mind Express dialog.
2. Choose **File** > **Media library...** (**Ctrl** + **Shift** + **M**).
3. In the top left, choose the **Documents** library.
4. From the file list, select the folder you want to drag the documents to.
5. Open Explorer.
6. Resize the Explorer window and position it next to the dialog of the media library.

7. In Explorer, select the files you want to add to the media library.
8. Drag the selection to the file list in the media library.

See also

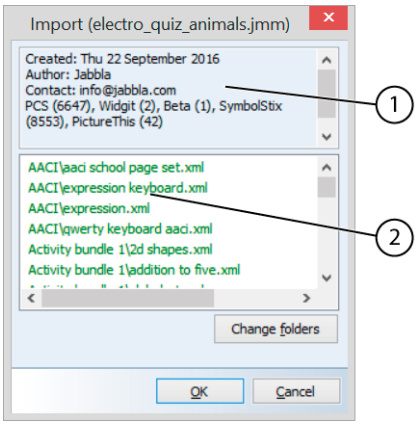
Adding a document to the media library by importing it on page 31
Adding a document to the media library by double-clicking on page 31

1.9 Adding a document to the media library by importing it

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **Document (*.bls, *.jmm)...**
2. In **Explorer**, select the document you want to import.

NOTE
*Only documents of the *.jmm, *.bls or *.zip type can be added. Some browsers automatically rename jmm files as zip files. You can import the zip files.*

3. Click **Open**.



All files that are linked to the document are imported. General information about the document is displayed at the top (1) in the **Import** dialog. At the bottom (2) a list of the files to be imported is displayed. The images appear in blue, the sound files in violet, the video files in magenta and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green.

4. If you wish to change the location of the files to be imported, click **Change folders**, change the location of the imported documents, pictures, sounds, music and video and click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** to start importing.
   All files that are linked to the document are imported. In the **Import** dialog you will see an overview of the imported files. The images appear in blue, the sound files in violet, the video files in magenta and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

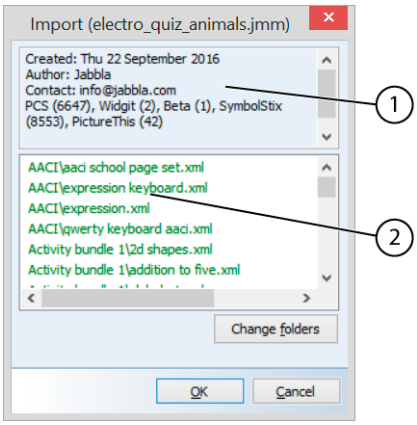
Adding a document to the media library through the media library on page 30
Adding a document to the media library by double-clicking on page 31
Adding a document to the media library using Explorer on page 30

1.10 Adding a document to the media library by double-clicking

A document you have received from someone or that you have downloaded from the Mind Express website (http://www.mindexpress.be) and which is of the *.jmm type, can be double-clicked in **Explorer**. The document is opened in Mind Express and together with all linked files it is automatically imported into the media library.

CAUTION
*Double-clicking the document CANNOT be used to import Mind Express 3 files (i.e. *.bls files).*

1. Open the **Explorer**.
2. Double-click the Mind Express file.



All files that are linked to the document are imported. General information about the document is displayed at the top (1) in the **Import** dialog. At the bottom (2) a list of the files to be imported is displayed. The images appear in blue, the sound files in violet, the video files in magenta and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green.

3. If you wish to change the location of the files to be imported, click **Change folders**, change the location of the imported documents, pictures, sounds, music and video and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK** to start importing.
   All files that are linked to the document are imported. In the **Import** dialog you will see an overview of the imported files. The images appear in blue, the sound files in violet, the video files in magenta and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a document to the media library through the media library on page 30
Adding a document to the media library by importing it on page 31
Adding a document to the media library using Explorer on page 30

2 Working with a document

2.1 Creating a new document

To use a structured approach when creating a new document in Mind Express, advance as follows:

1. Choose **File** > **New...**.
2. Choose one of the following options:
   - Create an empty document

     Use the default style set or, as required, select a specific style set from the **Styleset:** drop-down list.
   - Use template

     Select a template from the drop-down list. Certain settings have already been defined in the template.
3. Click **OK**.
   - If you have selected **Create empty document**, the **Page settings** dialog is displayed. Set the page (Page settings on page 39) and click **OK**.
   - If you have chosen **Use template**, then the new document will appear, based on the selected template.
4. Save the document.
5. Enable editing by right-clicking in Mouse mode. See Edit option settings on page 168.
6. Fill the cells (use Quick Edit where possible). See Quick Fill a cell on page 45.
7. Create the styles and name them. See Creating a new style on page 51.
8. Apply the styles to the cells. See Customizing the style of a cell on page 51.
9. As required, copy cells and/or pages. See Copying a cell on page 55, Copying and pasting a page on page 38.
10. Specify the document preferences: See The document preference settings on page 34.
11. Resize the document. See The document size settings on page 36.
12. Save all changes.
13. Disable editing by right-clicking in Mouse mode. See Edit option settings on page 168.

2.2 Creating a copy of a document

You can make a copy of the current document, so that the document together with all linked documents are copied to a folder specified in Media Library Documents. All the links between the files will still be working. Making a copy of an existing document is very useful if you want to modify the document without changing the original files.

For example: you want to customize the Mind Express sample file for a user. Make a copy of the sample file and customize for the user. This way the original sample file remains unchanged.

1. Choose **File** > **Make copy...**.
2. In the top field, enter the name of the folder you want to copy all the documents to.
   The folder is created in Documents in the Media Library.
3. In the bottom field, change the text you want to add to all documents.
   By default, the folder name is added to each document.
   Example: **me4_eng** (Alex)

2.3 Creating your own template

If you have created a document that you want to reuse regularly as a basis for a new document, then you can create a template.

1. You can either format the document from scratch, or open a document that you want to use as a template.
2. Choose **File** > **Save as...**.
3. Enter the name of the template in the **Name:** field.
4. From the **Save as:** drop-down list, choose **Templates**.
5. Click **Save**.
6. Confirm in the **Mind Express** dialog.
   Only the current page of the document is saved as a template.

2.4 Requesting the document settings

The document settings may contain information about the author, contact information and a description of the document. This information is very useful when you export the document and share it with other users.

TIP
You can share Mind Express documents with other users via www.mindexpress.be.

1. Open the file.
2. Choose **File** > **Properties...**.
   The **Document properties** dialog is displayed with information about the author, contact information and a description of the file.

See also
Editing document settings on page 33

2.5 Editing document settings

The document settings may contain information about the author, contact information and a description of the document. This information is very useful when you export the document and share it with other users.

TIP
You can share Mind Express documents with other users via www.mindexpress.be.

To edit the settings of a document, proceed as follows:

1. Open the file.
2. Choose **File** > **Properties...**.
3. In the **Author:** field, enter the name of the person who created the document.
4. In the **Contact:** field, enter information on how another user can contact the author of the document. For example the author's e-mail address.
5. In the **Description:** field, enter an explanation about the document created. State whether it is a communication grid, a game, an exercise or another application. Also mention the symbol sets used.
6. Click **OK**.

See also
Requesting the document settings on page 33

2.6 Exporting a document

The file export function can be used to transfer a Mind Express document from one computer or device to another computer or device. In this case you can first export the document, copy it to a USB memory stick and import it.

You can export documents to share with colleagues and friends or you can export files to share online through http://www.mindexpress.be

1. Open the document you wish to export.
2. Choose **File** > **Export** > **Current document...**.

3. Choose the location to save the document to and if necessary, change the file name.
4. Click **Save**.
5. As required, change the details in the **Author:**, **Contact:** and **Info:** fields.
6. From the **Export:** option group, select or deselect the required check boxes:

Option	Explanation
Images	If you select this option, all linked pictures are exported together with the document.
Sounds	If you select this option, all linked media library sounds are exported together with the document.
Linked documents	If you select this option, all linked documents are exported together with the document. So also the linked documents in the linked documents.
Music	If you select this option, all linked music files (such as mp3 files) are exported together with the document. The size of the exported file can become very substantial if a large number of music files are exported together with the file.
Video	If you select this option, all linked video files (such as WMP) are exported together with the document. The size of the exported file can become very substantial if a large number of video files are exported together with the file.

NOTE
*If you have the same document on the computer as on your device, and you have only made changes to the document (so not to the pictures, sounds, music or video), then you can deselect all the options in the **Export:** options group before exporting the file. This will reduce the size of the file and you will be able to export and import it much faster.*

7. Click **OK**.
   In the top of the **Export** dialog you will see an overview of the exported files. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green. In the bottom you will see an overview of the symbols used in the export.

NOTE
If symbol sets are used in the exported file, which are not available on the computer or device where the file is being imported, then the cells with these symbols are not filled.

8. Click **OK**.

2.7 Show all document links

You can show all current document links or all linked documents in a dialog. This allows you to search for an incorrect link.

For example: when exporting documents, there may be a link to an old document. This means all links of the old document are included in the export. So before exporting, show all links of the document and check that they are correct.

1. Choose **File** > **Document links...**.
   All links in the current document are displayed.
2. Choose the **Show links in all (linked) documents** option to display all linked documents.
3. Use the filter to search by file name.

2.8 The document preference settings

You can configure a number of preferences for the current document.

1. Choose **Document** > **Preferences...**.
2. In the **General** options group, specify the following:

Preference	Explanation
Use specific selection settings	If you enable this option, then the specific selection settings are used for the current document, irrespective of the user settings. Select from the drop-down list: ▪ **Mouse** ▪ **Joystick** ▪ **Scanning** ▪ **Eye tracking** Then click **Settings** and see: ▪ Mouse selection on page 131 ▪ Joystick selection on page 137 ▪ Scanning selection on page 141

Preference	Explanation
	▪ Eye control on page 147
Always return to first page	If you enable this option and are using a communication grid that consists of several pages, then Mind Express will automatically return to the first page after you have selected a cell on one of the other pages.
Always return to level 1	If you enable this option and are using a communication grid that consists of several information levels, then Mind Express will automatically return to level 1 after you have selected a cell on level 2 or 3.
Sound when dragging	If you enable this option, the user will hear a sound when dragging.
Wait for speech before page change	If you enable this option, another page is only opened when the speech on the current page has completely stopped.

3. In the **Formatting** options group, specify the following:

Preference	Explanation
Layout	Select the option to display the communication grids with a fixed size. This will ensure that communication grids are printed correctly or are correctly formatted for other devices. Click the colored cell and specify the color of the area surrounding the communication grid.
Use template for new pages	If you enable this option, then the selected template is used for each new page you create.

4. In the **Message box** options group, specify the following:

Preference	Explanation
No speech when adding to Message box	The words are added to the message box are not immediately said aloud.
Start with active Message box	If this option is enabled, you can start writing the message as soon as the document is opened.
Put symbols when storing Message in cell	When saving a message in a cell, the symbols are displayed in the cell. In the **Number of symbols:** field, enter the maximum number of symbols that are displayed in the cell.
Highlight while reading	Check this option to visualize the word while reading the note. From the drop-down list, select whether you want to color the text or the background. Click in the colored cell to select the color you want to use for visualizing the word. This option cannot be used on the Zingui and on the Smart.

5. In the **Prediction** options group, specify the following:

Preference	Explanation
Word prediction:	Word prediction can be used at a text and/or associated symbol level. Select from the drop-down list: ▪ **Text only**, word prediction at text level. ▪ **Text (with symbols)**, cells for prediction with text and if available with symbols. ▪ **Symbols only**, prediction at symbol level if symbols are available. ▪ **Symbols (with text)**, cells for prediction with symbols and text if symbols are available.
Prefered set:	From the drop-down list, select which symbol set you want to use for symbol prediction.
Second set:	From the drop-down list, select which symbol set you want to use if no symbol can be found in the preferred set.
No speech when adding to Message box	The words are added to the message box are not immediately said aloud.
Start with active Message box	If this option is enabled, you can start writing the message as soon as the document is opened.
Put symbols when storing Message in cell	When saving a message in a cell, the symbols are displayed in the cell. In the **Number of symbols:** field, enter the maximum number of symbols that are displayed in the cell.

Preference	Explanation
Save window position	To save the current position and size of the window.
Save last opened page	When the document is opened, it opens on the page that was last active.
Save dynamic lists status	If dynamic lists are being used in the document, then the status of the dynamic lists is saved. Every time you open a page with dynamic lists, the list is displayed as it was last shown.
Use specific selection settings	If you enable this option, then the specific selection settings are used for the current document, irrespective of the user settings. Select from the drop-down list: ▪ **Mouse** ▪ **Joystick** ▪ **Scanning** ▪ **Eye tracking** Then click **Settings** and see: ▪ Mouse selection on page 131 ▪ Joystick selection on page 137 ▪ Scanning selection on page 141 ▪ Eye control on page 147
Layout	Select the option to display the communication grids with a fixed size. This will ensure that communication grids are printed correctly or are correctly formatted for other devices. Click the colored cell and specify the color of the area surrounding the communication grid.

6. In the **Save** options group, specify the following:

Preference	Explanation
Save window position	To save the current position and size of the window.
Save last opened page	When the document is opened, it opens on the page that was last active.
Save dynamic lists status	If dynamic lists are being used in the document, then the status of the dynamic lists is saved. Every time you open a page with dynamic lists, the list is displayed as it was last shown.

7. Click **OK**.

2.9 The document size settings

You can specify the size of the current document.

1. Choose **Document** > **Preferences...**.
2. Select the **Layout** option and choose a size from the drop-down list.
3. Click the colored cell and specify the color of the area surrounding the communication grid.
4. Click **OK**.

2.10 Searching in a document (Mouse mode)

As a user (or supervisor), in Mouse mode you can search for the pages that contain a specific label or a certain action. You can also search for a cell ID.

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Find** > **Find pages...**
   - Press **Ctrl** + **D**
2. In the **Find in:** in options group, choose where to search:
   - **Labels**
   - **Actions**
   - **Labels and actions**
   - **Document links**, searches for cells that have a link to another document.
3. In the **Find what:** box, enter the word (or part of the word).

   To search for a cell ID, place `id:` in front of the search term.
4. As required, select the **Match whole word** option if you want a full match with the word entered. Do not select this option if you want to see all the results that include the text entered.

5. Click **OK**.
   An overview is displayed of the pages that contain the word.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Searching in a document (Edit mode) on page 37

2.11 Searching in a document (Edit mode)

In Edit mode you can search for a label or an action. You can also search for a cell ID.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Find** > **Find**
   - Press **Ctrl** + **F**
3. In the **Find in:** in options group, choose where to search:
   - **Labels**
   - **Actions**
   - **Labels and actions**
   - **Document links**, searches for cells that have a link to another document.
4. In the **Find what:** box, enter the word (or part of the word).
   To search for a cell ID, place `id:` in front of the search term.
5. As required, select the **Match whole word** option if you want a full match with the word entered. Do not select this option if you want to see all the results that include the text entered.
6. Click **OK**.
   The cell that matches the search is selected (black markers).
7. Choose **Edit** > **Find** > **Find next** (**F3**).

See also

Searching in a document (Mouse mode) on page 36

2.12 Importing files

2.12.1 Importing a file

You can import different types of files into Mind Express:

- Mind Express documents and *.bls or *;jmm or *.zip document types. See Adding a document to the media library by importing it on page 31.
- Mind Express documents from the Zingui or Smart, see Importing a file from Zingui or Smart on page 120.
- Grid files. See Importing a Grid file on page 37.
- Boardmaker files. See Importing a Boardmaker file on page 37.
- Style sets. See Importing a style set on page 54.
- User data. See Importing user data on page 131.

2.12.2 Importing a Grid file

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **Grid 2 bundle (*.bdl)...**
2. Select one or multiple files and click **Open**.
   Click **Clear** to clear all added files.
3. Enter a name for the file in the text box.
4. Select the **Add speech action (based on label) for cells with no action** option.
   The text of the label is used to assign a voice action to the cell. This is only done if the cell has no other actions.
5. Click **Start**.
   The files are converted.
6. Click **Done**.
7. Click **OK**.
   The files are imported into Mind Express.
8. Click **OK**.
   The file appears in Mind Express.

2.12.3 Importing a Boardmaker file

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **Boardmaker 5/6 (*.bm2)...**
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select one or multiple files and click **Open**.

Click **Clear** to clear all added files.

4. Enter a name for the file in the text box.
5. Select the **Add speech action (based on label) for cells with no action** option.
   The text of the label is used to assign a voice action to the cell. This is only done if the cell has no other actions.
6. Click **Start**.
   The files are converted.
7. Click **Done**.
8. Click **OK**.
   The files are imported into Mind Express.
9. Click **OK**.
   The file appears in Mind Express.

3 Working with a page

3.1 Adding a new page

A new page can only be created in Edit mode. You can add a new page after the current page or after the last page. There are several ways of doing this.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Document** > **Page settings...**, click **Add page**, change the page setup as required and click **OK**.
   - Choose **Document** > **Add new page**. A new page is created using the page settings from the active page.
   - Press **Insert**. A new page is created using the page settings from the active page.
3. Enter the name of the new page in the **Add page** dialog.
4. Choose where you want to add the page:
   - **After the current page**
   - **At the end**
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Copying and pasting a page on page 38
Deleting a page on page 39

3.2 Copying and pasting a page

You can copy a page in one document and paste it into another document. This preserves the style of the cells. A new page can only be pasted in Edit mode.

To copy and to paste the page in the same document, you can duplicate the page. See Duplicating a page on page 38.

1. Choose **Document** > **Copy page**.
2. Go to the document where you want to paste the page.
3. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
4. Choose **Document** > **Paste page**.
5. Enter the name of the new page in the **Add page** dialog.
6. Choose where you want to add the page:
   - **After the current page**
   - **At the end**
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new page on page 38

3.3 Duplicating a page

You can only duplicate a page in the actual document. This preserves the page's style. You can add the new page after the current page or after the last page. A new page can only be duplicated in Edit mode. How to paste the page into another document, see Copying and pasting a page on page 38.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Choose **Document** > **Duplicate page**.
3. Enter the name of the new page in the **Add page** dialog.
4. Choose where you want to add the page:
   - **After the current page**
   - **At the end**

5. Click **OK**.

3.4 Navigating through the different pages

Perform one of the following actions to navigate:

Navigation	Procedure
To the first page	▪ Choose **Document** > **Go to** > **First page** ▪ Press **Home**.
To the previous page	▪ Choose **Document** > **Go to** > **Previous page** ▪ Press **Page Up**.
To the next page	▪ Choose **Document** > **Go to** > **Next page** ▪ Press **Page Down**.
To the last page	▪ Choose **Document** > **Go to** > **Last page** ▪ Press **End**.
Go to a page of your own choosing	Do one of the following: ▪ Choose **Document** > **Go to** > **Page...** ▪ Press **Ctrl + G**. Select a page from the list and click **Go to**.

3.5 Deleting a page

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Document** > **Page settings...**, and from the list choose the page you want to delete and click **Delete page**.
   - Go to the page you want to delete. Choose **Document** > **Delete page**.
3. Confirm in the Mind Express dialog.

See also

Adding a new page on page 38

3.6 Page settings

The general structure of the page can be defined in the page settings. You can use a fixed number of cells (grid), or you have the option to draw your own cells (freestyle). You can define a page background, have the pages appear as a pop-up window and/or you can always return to the previous page.

NOTE

*When creating a new document based on an empty document, the **Page settings** dialog is displayed automatically.*

1. Go to the page you want to edit.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Document** > **Page settings...**.
   - Press **F8**.
4. In the **Name:** field, edit the name of the page, as required.
5. From the **Page type:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Grid**, the page is composed of a number of rows and columns to create cells.
   - **Freestyle**, you can draw user-defined cells on the page.
6. If you have chosen to create a grid, define the number of columns, the number of rows and the space in between the cells.
7. To further define the page, see:
   - The page background settings on page 40
   - Displaying the page as a pop-up window on page 40
   - The always go back page on page 41
8. Click **OK**.

3.7 Inserting rows or columns on a page

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).

2. Right-click on the cell above or below where you want to insert a row or before or after where you want to insert a column.
3. Select **Insert** from the shortcut menu and then one of the following options from the shortcut menu:
   - **Row above**
   - **Row below**
   - **Column before**
   - **Column after**

See also

Deleting a row or column on a page on page 40

3.8 Deleting a row or column on a page

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click on the cell that belongs to the row or column you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete** from the shortcut menu and then one of the following options from the shortcut menu:
   - **Current row**
   - **Current column**

See also

Inserting rows or columns on a page on page 39

3.9 The page background settings

1. Go to the page with the background you want to specify.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Go to **Document** > **Page settings...**.
   - Press **F8**.
4. In the **Background** options group, specify the following:

Settings	Explanation
Color:	To specify the page background color or gradient fill. Choose one of the following options: ▪ **Solid** ▪ **Gradient (horizontal)** ▪ **Gradient (vertical)**
Image	To use a picture as the background for the page. Click **Image**. Select a picture and click **OK**.
Picture alignment	From the drop-down list next to the **Image** button, select how you want to align the picture in the background.
Scale:	Configure the scaling of the picture in the background. At 100%, the picture is placed over the entire background.
Maintain aspect ratio	Check this option if you do not want the picture to be distorted when used to fill the background.

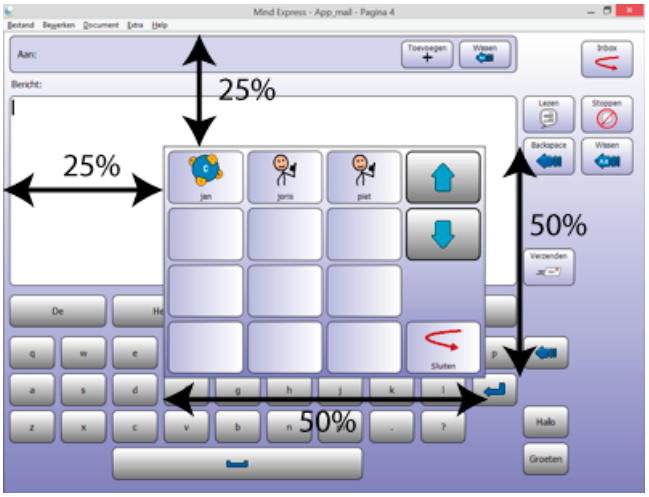
5. Click **OK**.

3.10 Displaying the page as a pop-up window

You can display a page as a pop-up window. This allows part of the underlying page to remain visible, under a gray transparent layer. For example: to send an e-mail you can select your contacts using a pop-up window.

1. Go to the page you want to show as a pop-up window.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Go to **Document** > **Page settings...**.
   - Press **F8**.
4. In the bottom of the **Page settings** dialog, select the **Pop-up window** option.
5. Click **Settings** and define the position and size of the pop-up window.

Settings	Explanation
Left:	Enter the position of the left border of the pop-up window as a percentage of the entire Mind Express window.
Top:	Enter the position of the top border of the pop-up window as a percentage of the entire Mind Express window.
Width:	Enter the width of the pop-up window as a percentage of the entire Mind Express window.
Height:	Enter the height of the pop-up window as a percentage of the entire Mind Express window.



6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **OK**.

3.11 The always go back page

After a selection on a page, Mind Express always automatically goes back to the previous page. This is useful if the user only needs to select one cell on the page to then return to the previous page. For example: on the communication grid with different categories, the user selects the fruit cell. A new page is opened. The user chooses a cell showing an apple. Mind Express automatically goes back to the previous page. So the user does not need to close the page.

1. Go to the page that automatically goes back to the previous page.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Document** > **Page settings...**.
   - Press **F8**.
4. In the bottom of the **Page settings** dialog, select the **Always go back to previous page** option.
5. Click **OK**.

3.12 Drawing user-defined cells on the page (freestyle)

Instead of working with a fixed number of cells (grid), you have the option to draw your own cells (freestyle). To do this, you need to change the page type.

1. Go to the page of which you want to change the page type to **Freestyle**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Document** > **Page settings...**.
   - Press **F8**.
3. From the **Page type:** drop-down list, choose **Freestyle**.
4. To further define the page, see:
   - The page background settings on page 40
   - Displaying the page as a pop-up window on page 40
   - The always go back page on page 41
5. Click **OK**.
6. From the toolbar, click on to activate drawing cells.
7. Click and drag on the page to draw user-defined cells in random places and of varying sizes.
8. To change the order of a cell, right-click on the cell, choose **Order** and then one of the following options from the shortcut menu:

- **Bring to front**
- **Send to back**

9. To change the alignment or size of the cells, select two or more cells, right-click on the selection and choose **Format** and then one of the following options from the shortcut menu:

NOTE
The cell with the black markers is used as reference cell!

- **Align top**
- **Align bottom**
- **Align left**
- **Align right**
- **Make same size**
- **Make same width**
- **Make same height**

10. As required, click on in the toolbar to deactivate drawing cells.

3.13 Translating text on a page

If you have created a communication grid in a language, it is easy to translate it using the translate option. This means you do not need to translate cell for cell; you can have all the labels and texts on one or all of the pages in an overview translated or have everything translated with Google Translate.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Translate** > **Translate text...**.
   - Press **Ctrl + F10**
3. From the **Translate to:** drop-down list, select the target language you want the page translated into.
4. Click **OK**.

NOTE
*The **Translate pages** dialog appears in the language of your choice. The program language has changed!*

5. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Current page	The labels and texts on the current page are placed in the overview for translation.
Pages (-)	Click on ..., enter the pages from and to, the labels and texts in the overview must be positioned so they can be translated.
All pages	The labels and texts of all the pages are placed in the overview for translation.

6. Click the **To:** cell and enter the translation next to the term from the **From:** column.

NOTE
*To translate all the text quickly, you can use Google Translate. Click **Copy all text**, click **Google Translate**, paste the text and translate it into the required language. Copy the translation and paste it back in the **To:** cell.*

7. Click **OK**.

3.14 Replacing a symbol on a page

It is easy to replace a symbol by another symbol on an extensive communication grid with several pages. There's no need to search through each page to find the relevant symbol.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Translate** > **Translate symbol...**.
   - Press **Ctrl + F9**
3. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Current page	Search and replace of the symbol is only performed on the current page.

Option	Explanation
Pages (-)	Click on ..., enter the From and To pages, and the symbol you want to search and replace.
All pages	Search and replace of the symbol is performed on all pages.

4. Click **From:** and find the symbol you want to replace.
5. Click **To:** and find the symbol you want to replace it with.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Replacing the symbol set on a page on page 43

3.15 Replacing the symbol set on a page

It is easy on a communication grid to replace the symbols on one symbol set with the symbols from another symbol set. As a result, you do not need to replace each symbol separately.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Translate** > **Translate symbolset...**.
   - Press **Ctrl** + **F11**
3. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Current page	Only the symbols on the current page are replaced by the symbols from the other symbol set.
Pages (-)	Click on ..., enter the From and To pages, and the symbols will be replaced by the symbols from the other symbol set.
All pages	The symbols on all pages are replaced by the symbols from the other symbol set.

4. From the **From symbol set:** drop-down list, select the symbol set you want to replace.
5. From the **To symbol set:** drop-down list, select the symbol set you want to use to replace the other symbol set.
6. From the **If translation not found:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Hide cell**
   - **Remove symbol from cell**
   - **Leave cell unchanged**
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Replacing a symbol on a page on page 42

3.16 Printing a page

1. Choose **File** > **Print** > **Print Pages...**.
2. From the **Print** dialog, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Full Page	The page is printed on a full page. As required, deselect the **Keep aspect ratio** option.
Custom size	Specify the width and height of the print. As required, deselect the **Center on page** option. If you have specified sizes in the document preferences, then the sizes are automatically copied.

3. As required, deselect the **Print labels** option.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Select the printer from the **Select Printer** options group.
6. In the **Print Range** options group, specify which pages to print. By default the active page is specified here.

4 Editing a cell

4.1 Selecting cells

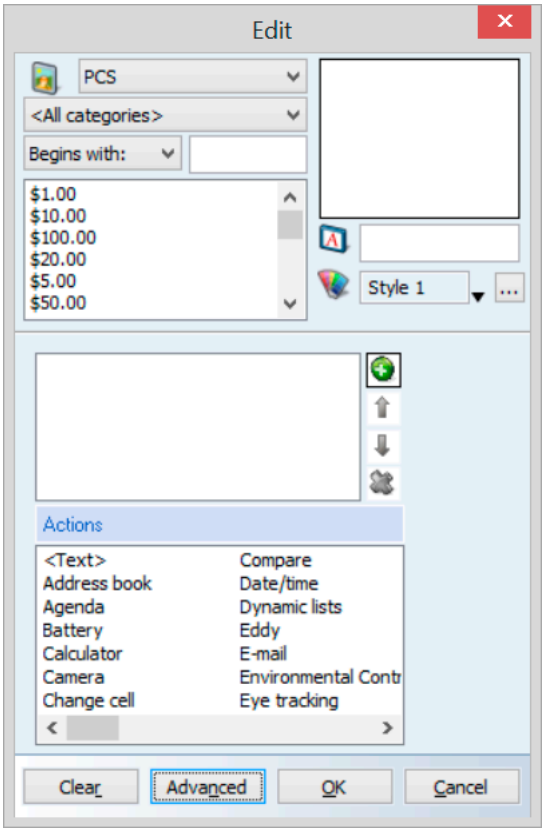
You can select a number of cells at the same time. Use **Shift** and/or **Ctrl** for this.

- To select a number of non-contiguous cells: press **Ctrl** and left-click to select the cells.
- To select a block of cells: click on the first cell, hold down the **Shift** key and click on the last cell. All the cells between the two cells are selected.

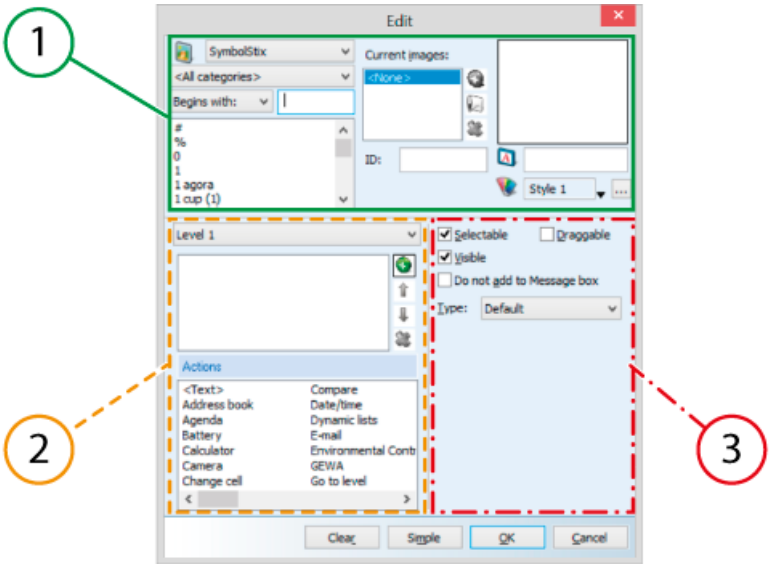
4.2 Editing a cell

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click on the cell.
   - Right-click on the cell and select **Go to editor...** from the shortcut menu.
   - Select the cell and click **F5**.

   The **Edit** dialog appears.



3. As necessary, click the **Advanced** button to go to the 3-part **Edit** dialog.



Part	Explanation
1	**Symbool** options group. To fill the cell with a symbol and a label. Additionally, you can assign the style and an ID to the cell.
2	**Actie** options group. To add one or more actions to the cell. If you click on the cell, the actions are performed in that order. Actions can be added at 3 levels.
3	**Eigenschappen** options group. To configure the settings of the cell. You can edit the cell to make it selectable, draggable or visible. You can change the cell into an address book cell, an agenda cell, a camera cell, ...

4.3 Quick Fill a cell

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select an empty cell.
3. Start to type.

   The name of the symbol, the label and the text is completed in the toolbar.

   CAUTION
   If the cell is not empty, then only the label of the existing cell is changed!

4. Press **Enter** to confirm and to go to the next cell.

   NOTE
   *Before pressing **Enter**, you can also press **F6** or click ▼ next to the name of the symbol, to open the symbol window and view all the different symbols. If you have selected **<All>** at the bottom, then all the symbols are selected. If you have chosen a specific symbol database, then all available symbols in that database are displayed.*

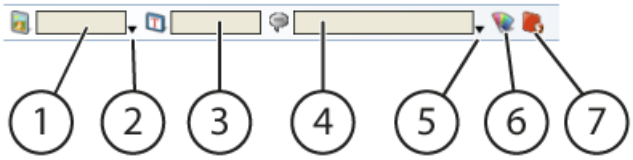
See also

Filling a cell using the toolbar on page 45
Filling the cell using the Edit dialog on page 46
Quick Fill cells on page 54

4.4 Filling a cell using the toolbar

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (or press **F2**).

   The **Edit** toolbar appears at the top.



Number	Explanation
1	To choose a symbol for the selected cell.
2	To open the symbol window.
3	To enter the label for the selected cell.

Number	Explanation
4	To display the first action for the selected cell.
5	To open the action window and to add, edit or delete actions for the selected cells.
6	To specify the color and style of the selected cell.
7	On a **Freestyle** type of page an additional button is displayed to enable or disable the function for drawing cells.

2. Click on the cell you want to fill.
3. Click in the field (1) and type the name of the symbol.
4. As required, click on the arrow next to the field (2) or press **F6** to choose a different symbol.
5. As required, change the label in the field (3).
6. As required, change the action (4) or click on the arrow next to the field (5) or press **F7** to specify the action in the action window.
7. Click to apply a style from the list or to create a new style for the cell.

See also

Quick Fill a cell on page 45
Filling the cell using the Edit dialog on page 46
Quick Fill cells on page 54

4.5 Filling the cell using the Edit dialog

There are 2 different layouts for the **Edit** window:

- A simple layout, containing the basic functions.
- An advanced layout, containing additional functions and advanced options.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Edit the cell (**F5**).
3. From the drop-down list next to , select the symbol set you want to use.
4. Choose the category from the next drop-down list, so you can filter even quicker.
   Example: Location, medical, nature, ...
5. As required, use one of the search criteria from the next drop-down list to quickly find the desired symbol:
   - **Begins with:**, all symbols that start with the letter you entered, are displayed.
   - **Contains:**, all symbols that contain the letters you entered, are displayed.
   - **Ends with:**, all symbols that end in the letters you entered, are displayed.
6. As required, change the label in the field next to .
7. As required, change the action. By default you will find the pronunciation of the selected symbol here.
8. Click on the arrow next to the field, to apply a style from the list or to create a new style for the cell.
9. As required, click **Advanced** to switch to the advanced layout of the **Edit** window to add some additional functions and/or advanced options.
10. Click **OK**.

See also

Quick Fill a cell on page 45
Filling a cell using the toolbar on page 45
Quick Fill cells on page 54

4.6 Editing the symbol in a cell

The symbols you use to fill the cells of a communication grid are selected from a number of symbol sets. You can supplement these symbol sets using your own symbols, photos, pictures or drawings.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Edit the cell (**F5**).
3. From the drop-down list next to , select the symbol set you want to use.
4. Choose the category from the next drop-down list, so you can filter even quicker.
   Example: Location, medical, nature, ...
5. As required, use one of the search criteria from the next drop-down list to quickly find the desired symbol:
   - **Begins with:**, all symbols that start with the letter you entered, are displayed.
   - **Contains:**, all symbols that contain the letters you entered, are displayed.
   - **Ends with:**, all symbols that end in the letters you entered, are displayed.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Editing a symbol on page 47
Adding multiple symbols to a cell on page 47

4.7 Quick Edit the symbol in a cell

The symbols you use to fill the cells of a communication grid are selected from a number of symbol sets. You can supplement these symbol sets using your own symbols, photos, pictures or drawings.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the symbol you want to edit.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click the toolbar in the field, and enter the name of the new symbol.
   - Click on next to the symbol cell. The symbol window appears. Select the new symbol.

TIP
*You can quickly edit the symbol in the cell using a symbol with the same name. Select the cell and press **Ctrl + Up Arrow** for the previous symbol in the list or **Ctrl + Down Arrow** for the next symbol.*

4.8 Adding multiple symbols to a cell

You can place multiple symbols in a cell and assign it a customized label. Make sure everything is still visible.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. From the drop-down list next to , select the symbol set you want to use.
3. Choose the category from the next drop-down list, so you can filter even quicker.
   Example: Location, medical, nature, ...
4. As required, use one of the search criteria from the next drop-down list to quickly find the desired symbol:
   - **Begins with:**, all symbols that start with the letter you entered, are displayed.
   - **Contains:**, all symbols that contain the letters you entered, are displayed.
   - **Ends with:**, all symbols that end in the letters you entered, are displayed.
5. In the symbol list, click on the symbol you want to add.
6. Click next to the **Current images:** list.
7. Add another symbol. As required, repeat from step 2.
8. Customize the label in the field next to .
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Editing a symbol on page 47
Editing the symbol in a cell on page 46

4.9 Editing a symbol

All used symbols in the different symbol sets are easy to edit in the **Edit Symbol** dialog. Only the Bliss symbols are edited in the specially designed Bliss Editor. See Creating a new BLISS symbol on page 172.

CAUTION
The edited symbols are saved in the media library. The symbols from the symbol sets cannot be overwritten. The symbols from the media library can be overwritten.

You can create a new symbol using an existing symbol as a basis.

TIP
Instead of editing existing symbols, you can also use your own photos, drawings or illustrations. Import your pictures using the media library. See The media library on page 28.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Edit the cell (**F5**).
3. From the drop-down list next to , select the symbol set you want to use.
4. Choose the category from the next drop-down list, so you can filter even quicker.
   Example: Location, medical, nature, ...
5. As required, use one of the search criteria from the next drop-down list to quickly find the desired symbol:
   - **Begins with:**, all symbols that start with the letter you entered, are displayed.
   - **Contains:**, all symbols that contain the letters you entered, are displayed.
   - **Ends with:**, all symbols that end in the letters you entered, are displayed.

6. In the symbol list, click on the symbol you want to add.
7. Do one of the following:
   - Click next to the **Current images:** list.
   - Right-click in the preview window and choose **Edit Symbol** from the shortcut menu.
8. Edit the picture using the following tools:

Tool	Explanation
	To create your own drawing.
	To erase.
	To draw straight lines.
	To fill an area with color.
	To select the color you want to use from the picture.
	To select the color you want to use. Click to select transparent.
	To mirror the symbol horizontally.
	To mirror the symbol vertically.
	To rotate the symbol 90° in counterclockwise direction.
	To undo a change.
	To redo the last undo action.
Zoom level:	To zoom in or out of the symbol.
Brush size:	To set the size of the brush.
Picture name	Enter the name of the new symbol in the bottom of the dialog. The default name is the original name of the symbol, followed by (Edited). For example: Cat (Edited).

9. Click **Save and exit**.
10. Confirm in the **Edit picture** dialog.
11. Click **OK**.

See also

Editing the symbol in a cell on page 46
Adding multiple symbols to a cell on page 47

4.10 Adjusting the Bliss symbol view

You can adjust the Bliss symbol view by changing the thickness. This will allow the Bliss symbols to be displayed using a thinner or thicker line.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Symbol sets...**
2. In the **Bliss thickness:** drop-down list, change the thickness of the lines. You can choose a value of between 1 and 15.
3. Click **OK**.

4.11 Editing the label of a cell

If you select a symbol from one of the symbol sets, the text that is linked to it is automatically displayed in the field next to . If you want to display a different label from the default label for the symbol, you can enter the new label. For example: you want to display the label "sheep" together with the symbol for lamb. Instead of the default text "lamb", simply enter "sheep" in the label field.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the label you want to edit.
3. Edit the cell (**F5**). Change the name of the label in the field in the **Edit** dialog and click **OK**.

NOTE
Click next to the field to enter a longer text for a label. You can also indicate in the field that you want to insert a new line, by typing ## in the field, in the spot where you want to start a new line.

NOTE
*To replace the default label (and the default action) for the cell, right-click on the name of the symbol in the symbol list and select **Fill in Label and Action** from the shortcut menu.*

See also

Clearing the cell label on page 49
Editing the text of a cell on page 49

4.12 Restoring the default label of a cell

If you have entered a label different from the default label for the symbol in a cell, you can restore the default label's symbol.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell you want to restore the default label to.
3. Edit the cell (**F5**).
4. Right-click the name of the symbol and choose **Fill in Label and Action** from the shortcut menu.

NOTE
All actions in the cell are cleared and replaced by the default action!

4.13 Quick Edit the cell label

If you select a symbol from one of the symbol sets, the text that is linked to it is automatically displayed in the field next to it. If you want to display a different label from the default label for the symbol, you can enter the new label. For example: you want to display the label "sheep" together with the symbol for lamb. Instead of the default text "lamb", simply enter "sheep" in the label field.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the label you want to edit.
3. Change the label in the field on the toolbar.

4.14 Clearing the cell label

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the label you want to clear.
3. Press **Backspace**.
   The label has been cleared. As required, enter a new text for the label.

See also

Editing the label of a cell on page 49
Editing the text of a cell on page 49

4.15 Editing the text of a cell

The text is the message that is said aloud when you click on a cell. When adding a symbol, the text is completed by default. You can always edit the text.

For example: you can replace the text of a symbol (apple) with a complete sentence (I want an apple).

When you enter the text, you can choose from a number of word classes. You can conjugate verbs, decide to use plurals, adjectives, adverbs and personal pronouns.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the text you want to edit.
3. To quickly edit the text, click in the toolbar in the text box , and edit the text. If, additionally, you want to edit the word classes, proceed to the next step.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click on next to the text box. The following action window appears.
   - Edit the cell (**F5**). The **Edit** dialog appears.
5. Change the text.
   When changing the text, the word class is set to **Other**.
6. As required, change the word class. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Verb	Select this option if the word you have entered in the text box is a verb and you want to conjugate the verb. If the verb is already available, Mind Express will automatically enter the correct conjugation in the **Verb -** window. If the conjugation is not available, Mind Express will ask you to enter the conjugation yourself.
Noun	Select this option if the word you have entered in the text box is a noun and you want to use the plural.
Adjective	Select this option if the word you have entered in the text box is an adjective and you also want to use the adverb.
Personal pronoun	Select this option if you want to use the word as one of the personal pronouns, i.e. "I, you, he/she, we, you, they".
Other	No grammatical information is used.

7. As required, click **Data** to configure the details of the selected word class.

Word class	Explanation
Verb	Enter the conjugation of the verb in the present tense (PT), the past tense (PT) and enter the past participle.
Noun	Enter singular or plural. For example "pig" and "pigs"
Adjective	Enter the adverb and the adjective. For example "beautifully" and "beautiful"
Personal pronoun	Choose which personal pronoun you want to use for the text. For example: a photo of Madonna you can set as "Third person (he/she)".
Other	You cannot specify any details.

See also

Editing the label of a cell on page 49
Clearing the cell label on page 49

4.16 Quick Edit the text of a cell

The text is the message that is said aloud when you click on a cell. When adding a symbol, the text is completed by default. You can always edit the text.

For example: you can replace the text of a symbol (apple) with a complete sentence (I want an apple).

When you enter the text, you can choose from a number of word classes. You can conjugate verbs, decide to use plurals, adjectives, adverbs and personal pronouns.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the text you want to edit.
3. Change the text in the field on the toolbar.

4.17 Working with styles

4.17.1 Styles

A style allows you to record the way you format the cells. Once the style has been defined, it can be applied to other cells. By using a style you obtain:

- A consistent cell layout
- Substantial time-savings

The following items can be defined by using a style:

- The color and transparency of the cell
- The position and font of the label
- the position and size of the picture
- The color and thickness of the border
- The shape of the cell
- The use of a page indicator in the cell (indicating the link to another page)

The colors assigned to cells in a style can be chosen freely, but usually the international color code Fitzgerald key is observed.

Table 1: The version Jabbla

Color	Used for	Example
Yellow	Persons	Grandmother
Green	Verbs	To walk
Blue	Adjectives	Beautiful
Amber	Nouns	House
Pink	Preposition, social words	Thank you
Purple	To ask	How are you?
Brown	Adverbs	Tomorrow, rather, here, never, how, ...
Gray	Functions	Increase the volume of the device or computer.
White	Other	I'm hungry, I want to watch television.

4.17.2 Customizing the style of a cell

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select one or more cells.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click on the selection. Choose **Styles** and then the style you want to apply in the shortcut menu.
   - Click on in the toolbar and choose the style you want to apply.
   - Edit the cell (**F5**). Click on the arrow next tot and select the style you want to apply.
   - Press **Ctrl** + **Left Arrow**, to apply the previous style, press **Ctrl** + **Right Arrow**, to apply the next style.

4.17.3 Quick Customizing the style of a cell

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select one or more cells.
3. Click on in the toolbar and choose the style you want to apply.

4.17.4 Creating a new style

Sometimes it can be quicker to delete all the styles from a document if it has the default style set (except style 1) and to create a new style instead of editing the existing styles. For example: if the styles are very similar and you use the first method (mentioned below), then it is much quicker to create the styles and continue to make changes.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Document** > **Style settings...**. Click **Add style** .

     TIP
     The added style is based on the selected style. So always start by selecting the style that is most similar to the new style.

   - Click in the toolbar and choose **New style**. The new style is based on the style of the selected cell.
   - Right-click the cell and select **Styles** > **New style**. The new style is based on the style of the cell you right-clicked on.
3. To further define the style, see Editing a style on page 52.

See also

Editing a style on page 52
Deleting a style on page 53

4.17.5 Editing a style

Every time you create a new communication grid, Mind Express automatically applies the default styles. You can change the style of the cells, for example by adjusting the position of the text, scaling the pictures, changing the color of the cells, ...

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Edit the cell (**F5**). Click ... next to .
   - Choose **Document** > **Style settings...**. From the list, select the style you want to edit.
   - Right-click the cell and select **Edit style "**.
3. Do the following to change the style settings of a cell:

TIP
*View the specified changes in the preview cell in the top-right of the **Style settings** dialog.*

Field	Explanation	Example
Name:	As required, change the name of the style. Always use an obvious name.	
Color:	You can specify the background color of the cell. From the drop-down list, select one of the following options: ▪ **Solid** ▪ **Gradient (horizontal)** ▪ **Gradient (vertical)** Depending on the selected fill (solid or gradient) choose 1 or 2 colors from the default Windows palette.	
Transparent:	A cell can be given a higher or lower degree of transparency. Drag the slider to the right to increase the transparency. Drag the slider to the left to decrease the transparency. This can be useful if you are using a background picture on your communication grid.	
Label:	From the drop-down list, select the label position in the cell.	
Font	You can change the font, the font size and the color of the text of the label. For the text you can also specify italics, bold, underscore or strikeout.	
Adjust label size to fit cell	The label is automatically shrunk if the text does not fit in the cell. The label is adjusted in both width and height. This option is selected by default.	

Field	Explanation	Example
Image:	You can determine the position and size of the picture in the cell. From the first drop-down list, select the position of the picture in the cell. From the next drop-down list, select what percentage of the cell you want to cover with the picture. By selecting 100%, the entire cell will be covered by the picture.	
Border:	You can adjust the width and color of the border around the picture.	
Page indicator:	If a cell contains the **Go to page** action, you can choose how you want to display this. Select from the drop-down list: ▪ **None**: do not display a page indicator. ▪ **Arrow**: an arrow is displayed in the top right corner. ▪ **Folder**: the cell is displayed as a folder.	 
Margin:	You can add a margin to the cell so that the text and the image are located at a distance from the edge.	
Shape:	You can adjust the shape of the cell. From the drop-down list, select one of the following options: ▪ **Rectangle** ▪ **Rounded rectangle** ▪ **Circle** ▪ **Folder** ▪ **Speech bubble** ▪ **Thought bubble** ▪ **Hexagon** ▪ **Octagon** ▪ **Star (12 points)**	

NOTE
*Beware of the following potential confusion when using the **Folder** shape: A cell with a **Folder** shape and a cell that refers to another page and is used as a page indicator **Folder**, are displayed identically.*

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a new style on page 51
Deleting a style on page 53

4.17.6 Deleting a style

CAUTION
A style that is being used cannot be deleted!

1. Choose **Document** > **Style settings...**.
2. Select the style you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete style Ctrl click to delete all unused styles**.

   TIP
   Ctrl *+ click to delete all the unused styles.*

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a new style on page 51
Editing a style on page 52

4.17.7 Exporting a style set

You can export all styles used in a document. This allows the styles to be reused in another document at a later time.

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **Current styleset...**.
2. Choose the location to save the data and enter the name of the file in the **Filename** field.

   NOTE
   By default the following location is proposed `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\Stylesets`.

3. Click **Save**.

See also

Importing a style set on page 54

4.17.8 Importing a style set

You can import style sets into a document. This means you won't need to create any further styles, which will save a lot of time.

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **Styleset...**.
2. Select the style set you want to import.

   NOTE
   By default the following location is proposed `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\Stylesets`.

3. Click **Open**.
4. Confirm in the **Mind Express** dialog.
   All the styles from the selected style set are added. Styles with the same name are not overwritten, they are renamed.

See also

Exporting a style set on page 54

4.17.9 Deleting duplicate styles

Importing styles in a document, or creating and adding your own styles may result in styles occurring with the exact same properties. You can delete these duplicate styles.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Press **Shift** + **Ctrl** + **F8**.
3. Confirm in the dialog.
4. Click **OK**.

4.18 Quick Fill cells

1. Select the cells you want to fill quickly.

   TIP
   Press ***Ctrl + A*** *to select all cells or use* ***Shift*** *and/or* ***Ctrl*** *to select or deselect multiple cells.*

2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click on the selection and choose **Fill cells** from the shortcut menu.
   - Press **F4**.
3. Filter the symbols using the symbol list, category and search function.
4. Click the symbols you want to add or click **Add all**. The selected symbols can be seen in the top-right corner of the **Choose symbols** dialog.

TIP
*Use the **Move item up** and **Move item down** buttons to specify the order. Use the **Delete item** button to delete an item from the list. Use the **Clear list** to clear the entire list.*

5. Click **OK**.
   The symbols are added to the cells. If you have selected more symbols than the number of available cells, then only the first symbols in the list are added.

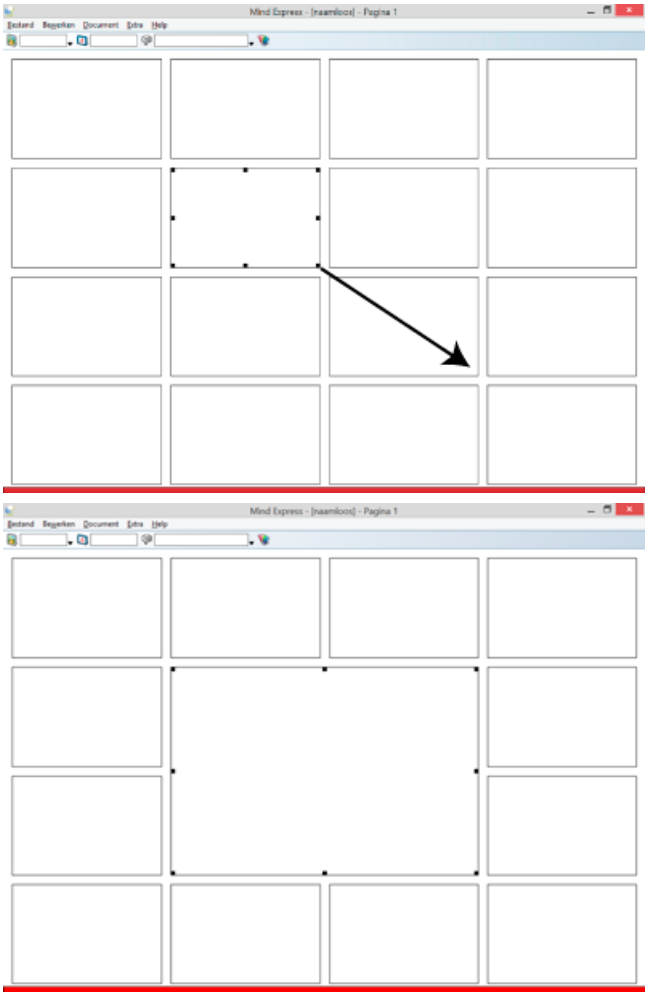
See also

Quick Fill a cell on page 45
Filling a cell using the toolbar on page 45
Filling the cell using the Edit dialog on page 46

4.19 Changing the size of a cell

You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell you want to resize.
3. Click on one of the black squares and drag until it has the desired size.



NOTE
*On a **Grid** type of page the size of the cell is changed according to the specified grid. On a **Freestyle** type of page you are free to change the size any way you like.*

4.20 Copying a cell

You can work more quickly and efficiently by copying cells. Everything, (symbol, label, style and actions) is copied from one cell to another cell.

If you copy a cell from one document to another document, the style is not adopted. If the name of the style also exists in the other document, then the other document's style will be used.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell.

3. Do one of the following:
   - Press **Ctrl + C**.
   - Right-click the cell and select **Copy**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Copy**.
4. Select the cell you want to paste to.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Press **Ctrl + V**.
   - Right-click the cell and select **Paste**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Paste**.

See also

Copying a cell to multiple pages on page 56

4.21 Copying a cell to multiple pages

As an example, there is the option to create a cell that allows you to return, and you can copy that cell to multiple pages. Or you can copy cells with categories to multiple pages.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click on the cell you want to add the action to and choose **Copy to pages** from the shortcut menu.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **All pages**, the cell is copied to all the pages.
   - **Pages**, choose the page or multiple pages (using **Shift** and/or **Ctrl**) you want to copy the cell to.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Copying a cell on page 55

4.22 Moving a cell

You can work more quickly and efficiently by moving cells. Everything, (symbol, label, style and actions) is moved from one cell to another cell.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press **Ctrl + X**.
   - Right-click the cell and select **Cut**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Cut**.
4. Select the cell you want to paste to.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Press **Ctrl + V**.
   - Right-click the cell and select **Paste**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Paste**.

See also

Switching around two cells on page 56

4.23 Switching around two cells

You can work more quickly and efficiently if you can switch around two cells. The complete content of the cells (symbol, label, style and actions) are switched.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell.
3. Drag the cell to the location of the other cell.

See also

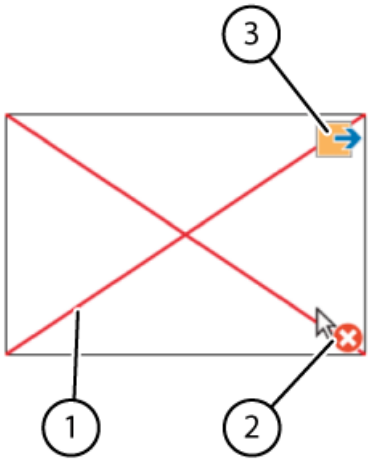
Moving a cell on page 56

4.24 Editing the cell settings

You can edit the cell to make it selectable, draggable or visible. You can change the cell into a certain type of cell, such as an address book cell, an agenda cell, a camera cell, ...

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

2. As required, select or deselect the following options:



Setting	Explanation
Selectable	The cell can or cannot be selected by the user. Example of non-selectable cells: title cells or cells to make your file more attractive or cells that can be skipped when scanning. In Edit mode, cells that are NOT selectable have an icon (2) in the bottom right of the cell. You can use the **Ctrl + Shift + U** shortcut key in Edit mode to make the cell selectable / unselectable.
Draggable	In Mouse mode, the user can drag the cell. Select this option in certain cells for exercises such as sliding puzzles. In Edit mode, draggable cells have an icon (3) in the top right of the cell.
Visible	You can start in a communication grid by making the simple cells visible, and at a later time you can make the more complex cells visible. To acquire a more attractive layout for the communication grid, make the cells that are not used invisible. In Edit mode, cells that are not visible are marked with a red cross (1) and in Mouse mode they are transparent. You can use the **Ctrl + Shift + I** shortcut key in Edit mode to show / hide the cell.
Do not add to Message box	If selected, the cell is not added to the message box. However, the cell actions are still performed. For example: the user can have short messages said aloud, such as "Please wait, I am busy typing a message", without the text of the cell being added to the message box.

3. From the **Type:** drop-down list, select one of the following types to configure the cell:

Type	See
Default	Restoring a cell to a default cell on page 122
Address book	Creating an address book cell on page 71
Agenda	Creating an agenda cell on page 75
Battery	Displaying the battery level on page 69
Camera	Creating a camera cell on page 77
Chart	Creating a diagram cell on page 123
Slideshow	Creating a slideshow cell on page 77
Dynamic lists	Adding a dynamic lists cell on page 111
Dynamic page	Adding a dynamic page cell on page 116
E-mail	Creating an e-mail cell on page 80
Internet	Creating an Internet cell on page 92
Clock	Adding a clock on page 69
Log	Creating a log cell on page 96
Music And Video	Creating a video cell on page 99, Creating a music playlist on page 98, Creating a video play list on page 99.
From message box	Creating a message box on page 64

Type	See
Eye tracking: monitor	Creating an eye control cell on page 125
Eye tracking: pause field	Creating an eye control cell on page 125
Calculator	Adding a calculator cell on page 102
Camera Smart/Zingui	Adding a Smart 3 camera cell on page 122
State	Creating a status cell on page 122
Phone	Creating a phone cell on page 108
Time Indicator	Creating a time indicator cell on page 75
Prediction	Creating a prediction cell on page 122

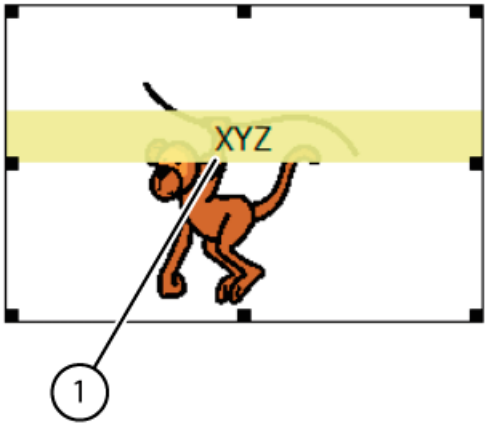
4. Click **OK**.

4.25 Changing a cell

You can use the **Change cell** action to change the content (label, symbol) and the settings (visibility, selectability, draggability) of a cell. You can also enable the action of another cell to be performed. These actions can be useful for playing games and can be used to selectively hide certain content in the communication grids.

The **Change cell** action is added to a cell. The action is performed by clicking on the cell. The actual action is performed by another cell that has an ID.

In Edit mode, the ID (1) of the cell appears in the center of the cell.



1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Change cell** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Execute actions	The actions of the cell with the specified ID are performed.
Animated gif: pause	Pauses the animated gif of the cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field. Use the action**Animated gif: play** to continue playing the animated gif.
Animated gif: play	Continuously plays the animated gif of the cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.
Animated gif: stop	Stops playing the animated gif of the cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.
Animated gif: play once	Plays the animated gif of the cell once, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.
Change label	The label of the cell with the set ID is replaced by the set label.
Store Message box	The message is saved in the cell with the set ID.
Scroll home label	Moves to the beginning of the text in the label. Either of the actual cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.

Option	Explanation
Scroll end label	Moves to the end of the text in the label. Either of the actual cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.
Scroll up label	Moves the text in the label up. Either of the actual cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.
Scroll down label	Moves the text in the label down. Either of the actual cell, or of the cell in which you entered the ID in the **Cell with ID:** field.
Change selectable	The selectability of the cell with the set ID is changed.
Change draggable	The draggability of the cell with the set ID is changed.
Change symbol	The symbol of the cell with the set ID is replaced by the set symbol.
Count label	A count label is a label with a number, for example "9000", "2 dogs", "house number 120". You can increase or decrease the count label of the cell with set ID with a specified value, or you can equal the count label to a set value.
Replace	The cell is replaced by another cell. To replace the cell, you need to enter the ID of the cells.
Change visibility	The visibility of the cell with the set ID is changed.

5. Click **OK**.

4.26 Pasting an image from the Internet into a cell

NOTE

This will only work with image files from the Internet, so not for images from a folder on your computer.

1. Right-click on the image from the Internet.
2. Choose **Copy image** or **Copy** from the shortcut menu.
3. Complete one of the following actions in Mind Express in Edit mode:
   - Right-click on the cell and select **Paste image** from the shortcut menu.
   - Click on the cell and press **Ctrl + Shift + V**
4. In the **Paste image** dialog, enter a name for the picture.
   The picture is stored in the media library in the folder named **Pasted**. The picture is not resized! The image is added to the cell. If there already was an image in the cell, then the image is added next to the existing image. If a label or a voice action has not yet been entered for the cell, then the name entered will be used as the label and as the voice action.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Pasting an image from a page into a cell on page 59

4.27 Pasting an image from a page into a cell

To make an list of your pages, you can take screenshots of your pages and paste them into a summary page. This will give the user a visual idea of what page to go to.

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Copy page image**
   - Press **Ctrl + Shift + C**
2. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
3. Select the cell you want to add the image to and perform one of the following actions:
   - Right-click the selection and select **Paste image**.
   - Press **Ctrl + Shift + V**.
4. In the **Paste image** dialog, enter a name for the picture.
   The picture is stored in the media library in the folder named **Pasted**. The picture is not resized! The image is added to the cell. If there already was an image in the cell, then the image is added next to the existing image. If a label or a voice action has not yet been entered for the cell, then the name entered will be used as the label and as the voice action.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Pasting an image from the Internet into a cell on page 59

4.28 Adding an action at another level

You can assign three information levels to the cells in a communication grid. Each level can contain one or more actions. The label and text may vary for each level, however, the picture remains the same for each cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. From the drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Level 1**
   - **Level 2**
   - **Level 3**
3. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
4. Choose an action from the **Actions** drop-down list and further configure the action.
5. If necessary, repeat from step 2 to add actions at another level.
6. Click **OK**.

4.29 Clearing the content of a cell (retaining the style)

You can clear the symbol, label and text of a cell all at once. The cell style is retained!

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell.
3. Press **Shift + Delete**.

See also

Clearing the contents of a cell (Grid) on page 60
Deleting a cell (Freestyle) on page 60
Clearing the contents of a cell (Freestyle) on page 60

4.30 Clearing the contents of a cell (Grid)

You can clear the symbol, label and text of a cell all at once, and restore the style of the cell to the default style.

NOTE
*The default style is the style that can be found at the top of the list in the **Style settings** dialog. Choose **Document** > **Style settings...** to open the dialog.*

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the contents you want to clear.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press **Delete**.
   - Right-click on the selection and choose **Delete** from the shortcut menu.
   - Edit the cell (**F5**) and click **Clear** at the bottom of the window. Confirm in the **Mind Express** dialog and click **OK**.

See also

Deleting a cell (Freestyle) on page 60
Clearing the content of a cell (retaining the style) on page 60
Clearing the contents of a cell (Freestyle) on page 60

4.31 Clearing the contents of a cell (Freestyle)

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell with the contents you want to clear.
3. Edit the cell (**F5**).
4. Click **Clear** in the bottom of the window.
5. Confirm in the **Mind Express** dialog.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Clearing the contents of a cell (Grid) on page 60
Deleting a cell (Freestyle) on page 60
Clearing the content of a cell (retaining the style) on page 60

4.32 Deleting a cell (Freestyle)

You cannot delete a cell on a **Grid** type of page. You can delete the row or column that the cell belongs to. You can delete a cell on a **Freestyle** type of page.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell you want to delete.

CAUTION
*This is only possible with **Freestyle** page types!*

3. Do one of the following:
   - Press **Delete**.
   - Right-click the selection and choose **Delete** from the shortcut menu (only for **Freestyle** page types).

See also

Clearing the contents of a cell (Grid) on page 60
Clearing the content of a cell (retaining the style) on page 60
Clearing the contents of a cell (Freestyle) on page 60

4.33 Editing the order (bring to front, send to back) of a cell (Freestyle)

Freestyle type pages can be stacked. You can specify which cell you want bring to the front or send to the back.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click on the cell, choose **Order** and then choose one of the following options from the shortcut menu:
   - **Bring to front**
   - **Send to back**

4.34 Aligning cells (Freestyle)

Only the cells in **Freestyle** type of pages can be aligned. The alignment is relative to the reference cell (cell with the black markers). You can specify how to perform the alignment.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select two or more cells. Ensure that the correct cell is selected as the reference cell (cell with the black markers).
3. Right-click on the selection and choose **Format** and then one of the following options from the shortcut menu:
   - **Align top**
   - **Align bottom**
   - **Align left**
   - **Align right**

4.35 Resizing cells to the same size (Freestyle)

Cells can only be given the same width, height or dimensions in **Freestyle** type of pages. The changes are always made relative to the reference cell (cell with the black markers).

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select two or more cells. Ensure that the correct cell is selected as the reference cell (cell with the black markers).
3. Right-click on the selection and choose **Format** and then one of the following options from the shortcut menu:
   - **Make same size**
   - **Make same width**
   - **Make same height**

4.36 Adding a scan word to a cell

If you select auditory feedback, the scan word in each cell, row or column is said aloud when your mouse pointer moves over the word or when it is being scanned. If a scan word has not been specified, the text of the cell is said aloud. You can also opt to have the label of each cell said aloud.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click on the cell that you want to add the scan word to and choose **Scanword** and one of the following options from the shortcut menu.

Option	Explanation
Current cell:	The scan word is assigned to the current cell. While scanning the cell, the scan word entered is said aloud.
Current row:	The scan word is assigned to the current row. While scanning the row, the scan word entered is said aloud.
Current column:	The scan word is assigned to the current column. While scanning the column, the scan word entered is said aloud.

NOTE
*On a **Freestyle** type of page there is only the option to configure a scan word for the current cell.*

3. Specify the auditory scan word.
4. Click **OK**.

5 Linking pages

5.1 Linking pages

The other pages in the file can be retrieved on the computer using the **Page Up**, **Page Down**, **Home**, **End**, **Ctrl + G** keys. You must add the action **Go to page** to a device with Mind Express in order to retrieve the other pages in the file. To make it easy for a supervisor to link the pages, it is important to give the pages an obvious name. See **Document** > **Page settings...**.

After an action, you can always go to **Document** > **Page settings...** to return to the previous page.

By going to **Document** > **Preferences...** you can always return to the first page after performing an action on another page.

TIP
*The **Document** > **Copy page** is very useful. See* Copying and pasting a page *on page 38*

TIP
Use the shortcut menu to copy a cell directly to multiple pages. For example, to make a return button. See Copying a cell to multiple pages *on page 56*

See also

Linking a page to another page on page 62
Linking a page to a new page on page 62

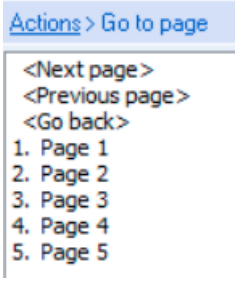
5.2 Linking a page to another page

By adding the **Go to page** action to a cell in a communication grid, you can use that cell to go to another page in the communication grid.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Go to page** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
As required, click on or on in the toolbar to sort the pages either alphabetically or numerically.

4. Choose the page from the list box.



5. Click **OK**.

See also

Linking a page to a new page on page 62

5.3 Linking a page to a new page

By adding the **Go to <New page>** action to a cell in a communication grid using the shortcut menu, you can use that cell to go to a new page in the communication grid.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cell you want to add the go to new page action to.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click on the selection and choose **Go to <New page>** from the shortcut menu.
   - Press **Shift** + **Insert**
4. Enter the name of the new page in the **Name:** field.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Linking a page to another page on page 62

6 Linking documents

6.1 Opening a document from another document

By adding the **Open document** action to a cell in a communication grid, you can use that cell to open another document on a selected page.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Open document** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click ... and select the document.
   - From the first drop-down list, select the folder that contains the document, and from the second drop-down list select the document.

   In addition to the documents, you can select the **<Previous document>** and **<Home document>** options from the drop-down list. The **<Home document>** option opens the first page of the set Home document. You can change the Home document in the document options. See Configuring the start-up options on page 167.
5. If necessary, change the page you want the document to open on, in the **Open on page:** field. By default the document is opened on page 1.
6. As required, select the **Don't save current document** option. The selected document is opened without saving the changes in the current document. Example: In case of sliding puzzle, it is recommended not to save the current document.
7. Click **OK**.

7 Sound

7.1 Sound

You can link a sound to a cell in a communication grid. The sound may be an existing *.wav file, or a sound file that you record in Mind Express. To record sounds, you need a microphone.

7.2 Adding a sound to a cell

You can link a sound such as a beeper or a song to a cell. Or you can make a sound recording and link it to a cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Select **Sound** from the **Actions** options group.
4. If necessary, choose a category of sounds from the drop-down list.

   TIP
   *Your own recordings can be found in the **Rec** category.*

5. Select a sound from the list box.
6. As required, click on:
   - to play the sound
   - to stop playing the sound
   - to record a sound and click on to stop recording. The file of the recording is selected.

   NOTE
   *To rename a sound, click twice on the name and enter the new name. To delete the sound, right-click on the file and choose **Delete file** from the shortcut menu.*

7. Click **OK**.

8 Message

8.1 A message

You can use messages in Mind Express. A message can consist of a series of symbols, text or both. Thanks to the speech synthesis engine, the message can be said aloud. Users can save the message and retrieve it and either partially or completely clear it, print it, ...

See also

Configuring the message options on page 64
Creating a message box on page 64
Adding an action for message box on page 65

8.2 Configuring the message options

If you want to add a message to a document, you need to define the options for the message.

NOTE
You can only add one message per document.

1. Choose **Document** > **Preferences...**.
2. In the **Message box** option group, select the following options as required:

Preference	Explanation
No speech when adding to Message box	The words are added to the message box are not immediately said aloud.
Start with active Message box	If this option is enabled, you can start writing the message as soon as the document is opened.
Put symbols when storing Message in cell	When saving a message in a cell, the symbols are displayed in the cell. In the **Number of symbols:** field, enter the maximum number of symbols that are displayed in the cell.
Highlight while reading	Check this option to visualize the word while reading the note. From the drop-down list, select whether you want to color the text or the background. Click in the colored cell to select the color you want to use for visualizing the word. This option cannot be used on the Zingui and on the Smart.

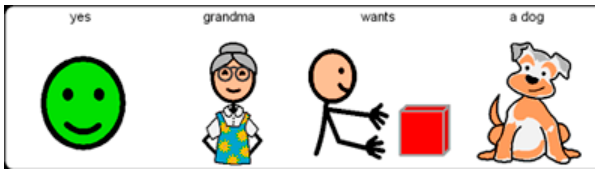
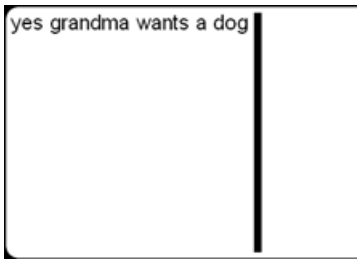
3. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a message box on page 64

8.3 Creating a message box

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **From message box** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. In the **Lines:** field, enter the number of lines you want to display in the message.
5. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Example
Text+Symbols	
Text	
Symbols	

6. As required, change the space between the lines in the **Line distance:** field. The smallest space is 1, the greatest space is 5.
7. If necessary, change the space between the symbols or text in the **Symbol distance:** field. The smallest space is 1, the greatest space is 5.
8. From the drop-down list, select where the note should start in the note cell:

- **Top left**
- **Top middle**
- **Top right**

9. Click **OK**.

NOTE
You need to activate the message in order to use it. See Activating the message on page 65.

See also

Configuring the message options on page 64

8.4 Activating the message

After you have added a message, you need to activate the message so that the selected cells appear in the message window.

Choose **Tools** > **Message box** > **Activate: on**.

You can start up the document with an active message. Choose **Document** > **Preferences...** and select the **Start with active Message box** option. Save the document, close the document and reopen the document.

8.5 Reading the full message out loud

Choose **Tools** > **Message box** > **Read all**.

8.6 Clearing the last character in a message

Choose **Tools** > **Message box** > **Backspace**.

If the **Allow typing in Message box** option is selected (see Allow typing in a message on page 169), you can use the **Backspace** to clear the last character in Mouse mode.

8.7 Completely clearing a message

Choose **Tools** > **Message box** > **Clear**.

8.8 Printing a message

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **File** > **Print** > **Print Message...**.
   - Choose **Tools** > **Message box** > **Print**.
2. From the **Print** dialog, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Full Page	The page is printed on a full page. As required, deselect the **Keep aspect ratio** option.
Custom size	Specify the width and height of the print. As required, deselect the **Center on page** option.

3. As required, deselect the **Print labels** option.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Select the printer from the **Select Printer** options group.
6. In the **Print Range** options group, specify which pages to print. By default the active page is specified here.

8.9 Adding an action for message box

An action for message box is used to control the message box.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Message box** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Activate: on	To activate the message box cell. You can write in the message box cell.

Action	Explanation
Activate: on/off	To switch between writing in the message box cell (active) and NOT writing in the message box cell.
Activate: off	To deactivate the message box cell. You CANNOT write in the message box cell.
Print Message	Print the contents of the message box cell.
Save as	To save the message to an existing cell.
Save as 'x'	To save the message as a separate file. Enter the name you want to save it as.
Store in cell	To store the message in an empty cell.
Add to sentence prediction	To add the message to the sentence prediction list.
Backspace	To delete the word or symbol that was last added to the message.
Cursor: End	To move the cursor to the end of the message.
Cursor: Home	To move the cursor to the beginning of the message.
Cursor: Left	To move the cursor one space to the left.
Cursor: Up	To move the cursor one space up.
Cursor: Down	To move the cursor one space down.
Cursor: Right	To move the cursor one space to the right.
Echo: on	To activate the echo function, so each word or item you add to the message is said aloud immediately.
Echo: off	To disable the echo function. Words or items that are added to the message are not said aloud immediately.
Capitalize previous word: on/off	To display or not to display the item in front of the cursor position with a capital letter.
Capitalize previous word: on	To display the item in front of the cursor position with a capital letter.
Capitalize previous word: off	To display the item in front of the cursor position without a capital letter.
Switch items	To switch the position of the two items in front of the cursor position.
Copy to clipboard	To copy the contents of the message to the clipboard.
Read paragraph	To read the paragraph.
Read all	To read the full contents of the message.
Read item	To read the item in front of the cursor position. The item can be a character or a complete word.
Read word	To read the word in front of the cursor position.
Read sentence	To read the sentence with the cursor position.
New Line	To add a new line to the message.
Undo	To undo the last actions in the message box. You can undo up to 10 actions.
Open Message	To open a message that was saved using the **Save as** action. Click the cell with the **Open Message** action and then click the cell in which you saved the message.
Open Message 'x'	To open a message that was saved under a specific name. The name of the message was defined in the cell with the **Save as 'x'** action.
Save as	To save the message in a cell with content.
Save as 'x'	To save the message as a file. The saved message can be retrieved using the **Open Message 'x'** action.
Store in cell: cancel	To cancel the previous **Save as** or **Store in cell** action.
Store in cell	To save the message in an empty cell.
Paste from clipboard	To paste the clipboard contents into the message. For example, a piece of text that was copied from the Internet can be pasted into the message.
Add: full stop (.)	To add a full stop to the message and to reset the grammar function.

Action	Explanation
Add: space	To add a space. You can also simply enter the space as text.
Add: exclamation mark (!)	To add an exclamation mark to the message and to reset the grammar function.
Add: question mark (?)	To add a question mark to the message and to reset the grammar function.
Clear all	To clear the complete message.
Clear character	To delete the character in front of the cursor position.
Delete word	To delete the word in front of the cursor position.
Delete sentence	To delete the sentence in front of the cursor position.
Join previous words	To join the 2 words in front of the cursor position.

NOTE
*The **Add: full stop (.)**, **Add: exclamation mark (!)** and **Add: question mark (?)** actions will reset the grammar. For example: I have a dog. Are we going for a walk? If you use the **Add: full stop (.)** action after "dog", the grammar is reset and changed to "Are". If you add an item as text, the grammar is not reset and you get "Is". The word "dog" was the last noun that was entered, so "to go" is conjugated.*

TIP
*When creating a keyboard, use the **Add: full stop (.)**, **Add: exclamation mark (!)** and **Add: question mark (?)** actions instead of adding the actions in the text.*

5. Click **OK**.

8.10 Saving the message in an empty cell

The **Store in cell** action allows the user to fill new cells with the content of the message.

1. Write a message.
2. Click on the cell with the **Store in cell** action.
3. Next, click on an empty cell to add the message.
   The text of the message is saved in the label and in the text of the relevant cell. Depending on the defined document preferences, a number of symbols are also displayed in the cell. See The document preference settings on page 34.
4. At a later time, click on the cell again to add the saved message to the message box or for it to be said aloud.

See also

Saving the message to an existing cell on page 67
Saving the message as a file on page 67

8.11 Saving the message to an existing cell

The user can save the message using the **Save as** action, and using the label of the selected cell as the file name. The selected cell retains its original content, format and action. The **Open Message** action allows the saved message to be retrieved by selecting a cell with the same label as the file name.

1. Write a message.
2. Click on the cell with the **Save as** action.
3. Next, click on an existing cell to add the message.
   The cell retains its original content, format and action. The cell retains its function. Behind it, the message has been added and can be retrieved again.
4. Click the cell with the **Open Message** action and then click the cell in which you saved the message.
   The saved message is added to the message box.

See also

Saving the message in an empty cell on page 67
Saving the message as a file on page 67

8.12 Saving the message as a file

The user can save the message as a file with the **Save as 'x'** action. The saved message can be retrieved using the **Open Message 'x'** action.

1. Write a message.
2. Click on the cell with the **Save as 'x'** action.
   The action is given the name of the file with the saved message.
3. Click on the cell later with the **Open Message 'x'** action.

   NOTE
   In this action the name of the file with the saved message to be opened must be specified.

   The saved message is added to the message box.

See also

Saving the message in an empty cell on page 67

Saving the message to an existing cell on page 67

9 Grammar

9.1 Grammar

Mind Express can automatically conjugate the verbs that are used in a communication grid.

If the first cell you select has been set up as a personal pronoun (e.g. I) and you click the next cell that is set up as a verb (e.g.: walk), Mind Express will automatically conjugate the verb: "I walk."

When entering a verb in a cell in Edit mode, Mind Express will automatically enter the correct conjugation in the **Verb -** dialog. If the conjugation is not available, you will need to enter the conjugation yourself.

In addition to the automatic conjugation you can also:

- conjugate verbs and put them in the correct tense.
- to use singular or plural nouns.

For example: Click the cell marked "I", then click on the cell with the **Past Tense** action and finally on the "walk" cell. If everything has been set up correctly, Mind Express should display: "I walked".

You can assign the following grammar functions to a cell in a communication grid.

- **Infinitive**, **Present Tense**, **Future Tense**, **Past Tense**, **Past Participle**. Choose one these functions to use the corresponding tense for the next verb.
- **1st person sing**, **2nd person sing**, **3rd person sing**. Choose one of these functions to use the first, second or third person singular of the next verb you select.
- **1st person plural**, **2nd person plural**, **3rd person plural**. Choose one of these functions to use the first, second or third person plural of the verb you select.
- **Singular**, **Plural**. Choose one of these options to use the singular or plural of the noun you select.

9.2 Adding an action for grammar

You can use the grammar actions to do the following:

- Conjugate verbs and put them in the correct tense.
- Use singular or plural nouns.

CAUTION

To conjugate a verb or noun, the data must always be entered correctly. See Editing the text of a cell *on page 49.*

Start by selecting the box with the grammar action. The next box you select will use the conjugation of the verb or noun.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Grammar** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
1st person sing	To use the verb in the 1st person singular.
1st person plural	To use the verb in the 1st person plural.
2nd person sing	To use the verb in the 2nd person singular.
2nd person plural	To use the verb in the 2nd person plural.
3rd person sing	To use the verb in the 3rd person singular.
3rd person plural	To use the verb in the 3rd person plural.
Singular	To use the singular form of the noun.
Infinitive	To use the verb as an infinitive.
Plural	To use the plural form of the noun.
Present Tense	To use the verb in the present tense.
Future Tense	To use the verb in the future tense.
Past Tense	To use the verb in the past tense.

Action	Explanation
Past Participle	To use the verb as a past participle.

5. Click **OK**.

10 Battery

10.1 Saying the battery level aloud

You can have the current battery level of your computer or device said aloud. For example: The current battery level is ninety-four percent.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Battery** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Displaying the battery level on page 69

10.2 Displaying the battery level

You can create a battery cell. This cell displays the battery level both visually and in percentages.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Battery** from the **Type:** drop-down list.

TIP
You can go to style settings to change the position of the label with the battery percentage, and to change the font of the label.

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Saying the battery level aloud on page 69

11 Clock

11.1 Adding a clock

In Mind Express, you can add a clock to a communication grid to show the correct time at any moment. You can choose from an analog or digital clock.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Clock** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Select from the drop-down list:
   - **Analog**
   - **Digital**
5. As required, select the **Show Seconds** option.
   In the analog clock the seconds hand is displayed, in the digital clock the seconds appear.
6. Click **OK**.

NOTE
*The time on the clock can be said aloud by adding the **Date/time** action to the cell with the clock. See Saying the date and time aloud on page 69.*

12 Date/time

12.1 Saying the date and time aloud

You can use an action for date and time to have the current day, date or time said aloud.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Date/time** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Say day	To say aloud the current day. For example: Friday.
Say date	To say aloud the current date. For example: seventeenth of October two thousand and fourteen.
Say time	To say aloud the current time. For example: nine fifty-three.

5. Click **OK**.

13 Address book

13.1 The address book

You can save the name, photo, e-mail and enter number of your friends and contacts in the address book. The address book can be used in a communication grid, for example to call a contact.

See also

Adding a contact on page 70
Creating an address book cell on page 71
Adding an action for address book on page 71

13.2 Adding a contact

1. Choose **Tools** > **Address book**.
2. Click **Add contact**.
3. Click on ... to add an image to the contact.
4. Use the drop-down lists in the **Symbol** dialog to find the picture, select the picture and click **OK**.
5. Enter the name of the contact in the **Name:** field. This is a required field!
6. In the **Email:** field, enter the e-mail address of the contact.
7. As required, select the following options:

Option	Explanation
Attach Mind Express Message (JPEG)	The text is sent to the recipient; the message with the symbols is sent as an attachment.

8. In the **Phone:** field, enter the telephone number of the contact.
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Editing a contact on page 70
Deleting a contact on page 71

13.3 Editing a contact

1. Choose **Tools** > **Address book**.
2. Select the contact.
3. Click **Edit contact**.
4. Click ... to add a (different) image to the contact.
5. Use the drop-down lists in the **Symbol** dialog to find the picture, select the picture and click **OK**.
6. If necessary, click the **Name:** field and change the name of the contact. This is a required field and cannot be left empty!
7. As required, click the **Email:** field and change the e-mail address of the contact.
8. As required, select or deselect the following options:

Option	Explanation
Attach Mind Express Message (JPEG)	The text is sent to the recipient; the message with the symbols is sent as an attachment.

9. If necessary, click the **Phone:** field and change the enter number of the contact.
10. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a contact on page 70
Deleting a contact on page 71

13.4 Deleting a contact

1. Choose **Tools** > **Address book**.
2. Select the contact you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete contact**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a contact on page 70
Editing a contact on page 70

13.5 Creating an address book cell

You can create an address book cell to allow you to scroll through your contacts.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Address book** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Specific Person	If you select this option, you can indicate the specific contact you want displayed in the cell. This can be interesting for enter numbers or e-mail addresses of persons you contact frequently.
Dynamic	The cell works as a dynamic list and displays one of the contacts from your address book. From the drop-down list, select one of the following options: ▪ **All**, to show all persons in your address book. ▪ **Telephone only**, to show only those contacts with an enter number. ▪ **E-mail only**, to show only those contacts with an e-mail address. Select the **Show Data** option if you want to display the details (phone and/or email address) of the contact in the cell.
List of recipients	In this cell only the contacts you have selected, are displayed. If you select a specific contact for a second time, then this person will be deleted from the list of recipients.

5. Click **OK**.

13.6 Adding an action for address book

Actions for address book are used to control the address book.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Address book** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Next	To scroll to the next contact in your address book.
Previous	To scroll to the previous contact in your address book.
Scroll to beginning	To scroll to the first contact in your address book.
Clear list of recipients	To clear all contacts from the **List of recipients** cell.
Add to Address book	The note is added to the address book. If you write the name, email address and telephone number on three separate lines in the notes area, all the data is placed in the address book using this action.

Action	Explanation
	Select the **Email:** option if you want to add the email address from the selected email to the address book. Select the **Phone:** option if you want to add the phone number from the selected message to the address book.
Add message box to recipients	The note is added to the recipients list. For example, you would enter a mobile phone number that has not been added to the address book into the notes area. This action adds the mobile phone number to the list of recipients.
Delete (next selected cell)	To remove a contact from the address book. Add this action to a cell. Click on the cell with the action and then select the cell with the contact you want to remove. If you add this action to an address book cell, the contact is deleted in the address book cell as soon as you select this cell.
Cancel Delete	To undo the **Delete (next selected cell)** action. For example, if you select the cell with the **Delete (next selected cell)** action by mistake, with the **Cancel Delete** action you can go back to select a cell with a contact without the contact being deleted.
Add sender to list of recipients	You can use this action to reply to an e-mail. The sender of the email is added to the list of recipients.

5. Click **OK**.

14 Agenda

14.1 Viewing the agenda

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Edit agenda**.
2. Choose one of the following tabs:
   - **Day**
   - **Week**
   - **Month**
3. From the **Current date:** field select the date you want to display.
4. Click **OK**.

14.2 Adding an activity

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Edit agenda**.
2. Click **New Appointment**.
3. In the **Activity** field, enter the name of the activity or appointment.
4. Next to the **Image** field, click on ... to add an image to the activity.
5. Use the drop-down lists in the **Symbol** dialog to find the image, select the image and click **OK**.
6. In the **When** drop-down list, choose to repeat the activity:
   - **Once**
   - **Every Day**
   - **Each working day**
   - **Every week**
   - **Every month**
   - **Every year**
7. Do one of the following:
   - For a once-only activity, click ▼ in the field below and select the date for the alarm.
   - For a repeat activity, click ▼ in **Start date** to select the date the appointment starts and click ▼ in **End date** to select the date the appointment ends.
8. From the **Duration** field, select one of the following options:
   - **Complete day**
   - **From Until**
9. If you have selected the **From Until** option, then enter the start time and stop time of the activity in the **From** and **Until** fields. Click on the hour digits and use the arrows to adjust the hour. Click on the minute digits and use the arrows to adjust the minutes.
10. If necessary, select the **Alarm** option if you want to be alerted when the activity starts or before the activity starts.
11. From the **Alarm** drop-down list, select when you want the alarm to go off:

- **When it starts**
- **5 minutes before start**
- **15 minutes before start**
- **30 minutes before start**
- **1 hour before start**
- **2 hours before start**
- **1 day before start**

12. Click on ... to set the alarm.
13. In the **Message** field, enter the text for the alarm.
14. Select the **Speak** option if you want the message said aloud to you.
15. Select the **Show message** option if you want the message to be displayed on the device.
16. To add a sound to the alarm, click ... next to **Sound**, select a sound and click **Open**.
17. Click **OK**.
18. Click **Save**.

See also

Changing an activity on page 73
Deleting an activity on page 74

14.3 Changing an activity

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Edit agenda**.
2. Select the activity you want to change.
3. If the selected activity is a recurring activity, choose one of the following options:
   - **Edit all**, to customize all activities
   - **Separate**, to customize only the selected activity
4. If necessary, enter the name of the activity or appointment in the **Activity** field.
5. Next to the **Image** field, click on ... to add an image to the activity.
6. Use the drop-down lists in the **Symbol** dialog to find the picture, select the picture and click **OK**.
7. In the **When** drop-down list, choose to repeat the activity:
   - **Once**
   - **Every Day**
   - **Each working day**
   - **Every week**
   - **Every month**
   - **Every year**
8. Do one of the following:
   - For a once-only activity, click ▼ in the field below and select the date for the alarm.
   - For a repeat activity, click ▼ in **Start date** to select the date the appointment starts and click ▼ in **End date** to select the date the appointment ends.
9. From the **Duration** field, select one of the following options:
   - **Complete day**
   - **From Until**
10. If you have selected the **From Until** option, then enter the start time and stop time of the activity in the **From** and **Until** fields. Click on the hour digits and use the arrows to adjust the hour. Click on the minute digits and use the arrows to adjust the minutes.
11. If necessary, select the **Alarm** option if you want to be alerted when the activity starts or before the activity starts.
12. From the **Alarm** drop-down list, select when you want the alarm to go off:
    - **When it starts**
    - **5 minutes before start**
    - **15 minutes before start**
    - **30 minutes before start**
    - **1 hour before start**
    - **2 hours before start**
    - **1 day before start**
13. Click on ... to set the alarm.
14. In the **Message** field, enter the text for the alarm.
15. Select the **Speak** option if you want the message said aloud to you.
16. Select the **Show message** option if you want the message to be displayed on the device.
17. To add a sound to the alarm, click ... next to **Sound**, select a sound and click **Open**.
18. Click **OK**.

19. Click **Save**.

See also

Adding an activity on page 72
Deleting an activity on page 74

14.4 Deleting an activity

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Edit agenda**.
2. Select the activity you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete** in the **Edit agenda** dialog.

See also

Adding an activity on page 72
Changing an activity on page 73

14.5 Adding an alarm

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Add alarm**.
2. From the **When** drop-down list, choose repeat alarm:
   - **Once**
   - **Every Day**
   - **Each working day**
   - **Every week**
   - **Every month**
   - **Every year**
3. In the **At** field, specify the time of the alarm. Do this by using the arrows.
4. Do one of the following:
   - For a once-only alarm, click on ▾ in the field below and select the date for the alarm.
   - For a repeat alarm in **Start date** on ▾ to select the date the alarm starts and in **End date** on ▾ to select the date the alarm ends.
5. In the **Message** field, enter the text for the alarm.
6. Select the **Speak** option if you want the message said aloud to you.
7. Select the **Show message** option if you want the message to be displayed on the device.
8. To add a sound to the alarm, click ... next to **Sound**, select a sound and click **Open**.
9. Click **Save**.

See also

Changing an alarm on page 74
Deleting an alarm on page 75

14.6 Changing an alarm

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Edit agenda**.
2. Select the alarm you want to change.
3. If the selected alarm is a recurring alarm, choose one of the following options:
   - **Edit all**, to customize all alarms
   - **Separate**, to customize only the selected alarm
4. As required, change the repeat frequency of the alarm in the **When** drop-down list:
   - **Once**
   - **Every Day**
   - **Each working day**
   - **Every week**
   - **Every month**
   - **Every year**
5. As required, change the time of the alarm in the **At** field. Do this by using the arrows.
6. Do one of the following:
   - For a once-only alarm, click on ▾ in the field below and select the date for the alarm.
   - For a repeat alarm, click ▾ in **Start date** to select the date the appointment starts and click ▾ in **End date** to select the date the appointment ends.
7. As required, change the text of the alarm in the **Message** field.
8. As required, change the **Speak** option if you want the message said aloud or not said at all.
9. As required, change the **Show message** option if you want the message to be displayed on the device or not at all.

10. As required, change the sound of the alarm by clicking on ... next to **Sound**, select a sound and click **Open**.
11. Click **Save**.

See also

Adding an alarm on page 74

14.7 Deleting an alarm

1. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Edit agenda**.
2. Select the alarm you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete** in the **Edit alarm** dialog.

See also

Adding an alarm on page 74

14.8 The agenda background settings

In a communication grid that uses agenda cells, you can specify a custom background for each month.

1. Open a communication grid with agenda cells.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Agenda** > **Custom background**.
3. Click on ..., next to the month with the background you want to customize.
4. Use the drop-down lists in the **Symbol** dialog to find the picture, select the picture and click **OK**.
5. Repeat from step 2 for the other months.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Carry out one of the following actions to save the changes in the communication grid:
   - Choose **File** > **Save**.
   - Press **Ctrl** + **S**.

14.9 Creating an agenda

To make your own agenda, you need to:

- Add a cell of the time indicator type. See Creating a time indicator cell on page 75.
- Adding agenda cells. See Creating an agenda cell on page 75
- Adding action for agenda to cells. See Adding an action for agenda on page 76

TIP
You can make a copy of the sample file for the agenda and customize the file.

14.10 Creating a time indicator cell

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Time Indicator** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Configure the time to display in the cell. Click on the hour digits and use the arrows to adjust the hour. Click on the minute digits and use the arrows to adjust the minutes.
5. There is the option to select a picture from the **Before image** field, which is displayed in the cell until the specified time has passed.
6. There is the option to select a picture from the **After image** field, which is displayed in the cell after the specified time has passed.
   Example: Before 22.00h a sun is shown and after 22.00h a moon appears.

14.11 Creating an agenda cell

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Agenda** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list below the type cell, choose what you want to display:

Option	Explanation
Show activity	Indicate the day on which you want the activities to be shown. As required, select the **Only show complete day events** option. Complete the **Starting time** and **End time** fields to record the time interval that is displayed by the agenda cell. For example, enter 8:00 and 12:00 to show all morning activities.

Option	Explanation
Show title	Indicate the day on which you want the title to be shown and from the drop-down list select **Format** to display the date format. For example: Monday, 20 October.
Timing	Select from the drop-down list: ▪ **Begin hour (for adding items)**, to show the begin hour of an alarm or activity. ▪ **End hour (for adding items)**, to show the end hour of an activity.

5. Click **OK**.

14.12 Adding an action for agenda

Actions for agenda are used to control the agenda.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Agenda** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Next day	To display the next day.
Previous day	To display the previous day.
Go to today	To display the current day.
Next week	To display the next week.
Previous week	To display the previous week.
Go to this week	To display the current week.
Next month	To display the next month.
Previous month	To display the previous month.
Go to this month	To display the current month.
Next year	To display the next year.
Previous year	To display the previous year.
Go to this year	To display the current year.
Go to specific month	To display a specific month. Select the month from the drop-down list.
Read cell	To read aloud an agenda cell.
Change begin hour	To change the begin hour of an appointment to the specified time. Select **Increase (+)**, **Decrease (-)** or **Fixed time** to specify a change to the begin hour.
Change end hour	To change the end hour of an appointment to the time set. Select **Increase (+)**, **Decrease (-)** or **Fixed time** to specify a change to the end hour.
Store in agenda cell	To store the contents of the message in an agenda cell.
Clear items	To remove an appointment from agenda. Select the **Use begin/end time** action to delete all the appointments in the agenda that fall entirely between the specified start and finish times. Add the **Select Cell** action to a cell. Click on the cell with the action and then select the cell with the appointment you want to remove. Add the **Select Cell** action to an agenda cell. The appointment in the calendar cell is deleted when you check this cell.
Clear items (Cancel)	To undo the **Clear items** action. For example, if you select the cell with the **Clear items** action by mistake, with the **Clear items (Cancel)** action you can go back to select an agenda cell with an appointment without the appointment being deleted.
Add alarm (at begin time)	Add an alarm to the agenda for the specified start hour.

5. Click **OK**.

15 Camera

15.1 Camera

You can use the camera to take your own photos. The device or the computer must be equipped with a camera or webcam to be able to use this feature.

See also

Creating a camera cell on page 77
Adding an action for camera on page 77

15.2 Creating a camera cell

You can display the photos you have taken in the camera cell.

NOTE
A communication grid can only contain 1 camera cell per page.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

TIP
You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Camera** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**.

15.3 Adding an action for camera

Actions for cameras are used to control the camera.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Camera** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Preview	To start the camera and display what is on the screen. The preview is displayed in the camera cell.
Take snapshot	To take a snapshot. Make sure you have a camera cell on your communication grid and a cell with the **Preview** action. This gives you a preview of what is on the screen and allows you to take better snapshots. After you have taken the picture, it will be displayed in the camera cell.
Stop	To stop the camera. Instead of the camera view, the last shown picture is displayed in the camera cell.
Previous picture	To display the previous picture of the photos taken.
Next picture	To display the next picture of the photos taken.
Delete picture	To delete the picture that is visible in the camera cell.
Next camera	If your device has several cameras (front, rear) then this action will enable you to switch to the next camera.
Select Camera	If your device has several cameras (front, rear) then this action will enable you to select the camera you want to use.

5. Click **OK**.

16 Slideshow

16.1 Creating a slideshow cell

The slideshow cell displays images or pictures from a selected folder. The images are displayed in alphabetical order according to the file name. The user can change the order by changing the name of the files. For example by starting the name with a number: 001 file name.

NOTE
A communication grid can contain multiple slideshow cells per page.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

TIP
You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

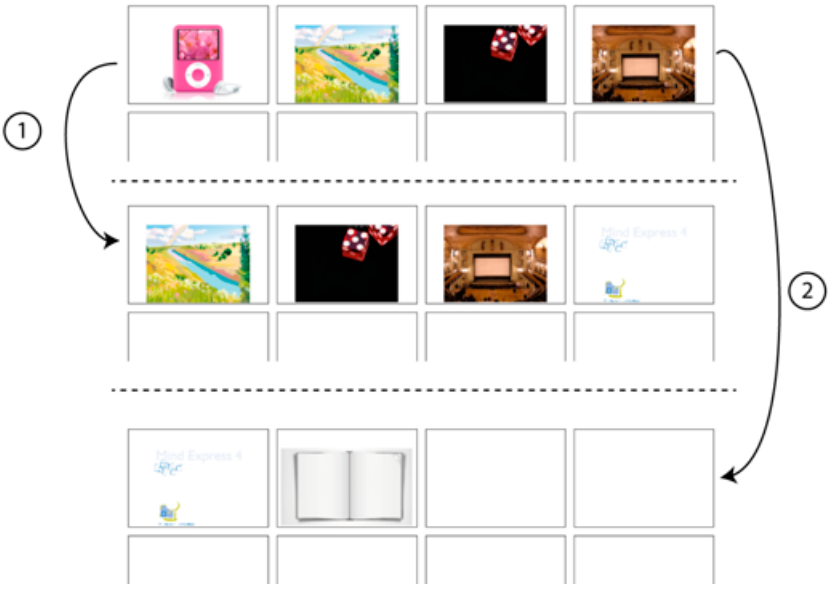
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Slideshow** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**.

16.2 Adding an action to slideshow

Actions for slideshows are used to control the slideshow.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Slideshow** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Next	To go to the next set of photos in the folder. (2)
Next (jump 1)	To go to the next photo in the folder. (1)
Previous	To go to the previous set of photos in the folder.
Previous (jump 1)	To go to the previous photo in the folder.
Go to beginning	To go to the beginning of the slideshow.
Start autoscroll	To start the slideshow and automatically display the next set of images.
Start autoscroll (jump 1)	To play the slideshow. Will automatically scroll through all the photos in the specified folder, one by one.
Stop autoscroll	To stop the slideshow.
Delete picture	To remove the photo that is currently visible in the presentation. In **Cell ID:**, enter the ID of the presentation cell.



5. Click **OK**.

17 E-mail

17.1 E-mailing

Mind Express offers a simple and efficient solution for e-mailing. You can send a message created in Mind Express as text or text with symbols to an e-mail address. Received messages can be opened and displayed or they can be said aloud.

17.2 E-mail in Mind Express settings

Before you can use Mind Express to send e-mails, you must first configure the e-mail settings.

NOTE
Mind Express only works with POP3 accounts.

1. Choose **Tools** > **E-mail** > **Settings...**.
2. Choose the **Server Settings** tab and enter the following details in the **User Information** group box:

Field	Explanation
Name:	Enter your name as you would like it to be displayed when sending an e-mail.
E-mail address	Enter your e-mail address.

3. Enter the following details in the **Server Information:** group box:

Field	Explanation
Configuration:	Choose the desired configuration for your e-mail. For example: gmail, hotmail, ... The incoming and outgoing e-mail details on the **Advanced** tab are completed automatically.
Login name:	Enter the user's account name.
Password:	Enter the password for the e-mail account.

4. Select the **Only receive e-mails from people from address book** option if you only want to receive e-mails from your contacts in the Mind Express address book.

   E-mails from unknown senders will be blocked, but are available in the inbox. Choose **Tools** > **E-mail** > **Inbox**.
5. Choose the **Advanced** tab and enter the following details:

Settings	Explanation
Incoming E-mail:	Enter the correct server for incoming e-mail, depending on the user's provider.
Portnumber for incoming e-mail server:	Enter the port number for incoming e-mail, depending on your Internet provider. These details are automatically completed, depending on the selected configuration (for example gmail) on the **Server Settings** tab.
This server requires a secure connection (SSL)	Specify whether or not a secure connection is required for this server.
Outgoing E-mail:	Enter the correct server for outgoing e-mail, depending on the user's provider.
Portnumber for outgoing e-mail server:	Enter the port number for outgoing e-mail, depending on your Internet provider. These details are automatically completed, depending on the selected configuration (for example gmail) on the **Server Settings** tab.
This server requires a secure connection (TLS)	Specify whether or not a secure connection is required for this server.
Authentication required for outgoing e-mails	Select this option if the server also needs the login details for sending e-mails.

Below is a list of e-mail settings for a number of popular providers:

Settings	Gmail	Hotmail	Yahoo
Incoming e-mail server	pop.gmail.com	pop3.live.com	pop.mail.yahoo.com
Outgoing e-mail server	smtp.gmail.com	smtp.live.com	smtp.mail.yahoo.com
Incoming port	995	995	995
SSL incoming port	selected	selected	selected
Outgoing port	587	587	465

Settings	Gmail	Hotmail	Yahoo
SSL outgoing port	selected	selected	selected

NOTE
The necessary settings also need to be configured for the account. The account must be set to POP, the security must be correctly configured and if Outlook is being used, it is necessary to save the e-mails on the server, so not to delete them.

NOTE
For all other accounts, please refer to your provider's documentation or contact your distributor's support department.

6. Choose the **Sounds** tab and select the sounds you want to hear when the e-mail has been sent, if there was an error sending the e-mail, and when you receive new messages.

   Select **Visual feedback** if you want a message to appear on your screen. If you do not want a sound to accompany a specific action, then deselect the option next to the sound.
7. Click **OK**.

17.3 Auditory and visual feedback settings with e-mail

In the following cases there is the option to have a sound played or a pop-up displayed:

- E-mail sent
- Error while sending e-mail
- New e-mails received

1. Choose **Tools** > **E-mail** > **Settings...**.
2. Choose the **Sounds** tab.
3. Click ... to choose a sound to confirm **E-mail sent:**, **Error while sending e-mail:** or **New e-mails received:**.
4. As required, select the **Visual feedback** option.
   A pop-up appears when the message is sent, if it failed to send or if there are new messages.
5. Click **OK**.

17.4 Sending an e-mail as an attachment

There is the option specify for each contact whether to also send the e-mail in an attachment as a jpg file.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Address book**.
2. Select the contact.
3. Click **Edit contact**.
4. As required, select or deselect the following options:

Option	Explanation
Attach Mind Express Message (JPEG)	The text is sent to the recipient; the message with the symbols is sent as an attachment.

5. Click **OK**.

17.5 Creating an e-mail cell

You can display information in an e-mail cell (and as required, have it said aloud):

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **E-mail** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Inbox cell	The sender and the content of the message are displayed.
Number of e-mails	The total number of messages in the Inbox is displayed.
Number of new e-mails	The total number of new messages in the Inbox is displayed.
Show e-mail sender	The sender of the selected message is displayed.
Show e-mail recipient	The recipient of the selected message is displayed.
Show e-mail date	The date of the selected message is displayed.

Option	Explanation
Show e-mail subject	The subject of the selected message is displayed.
Show e-mail content	The content of the selected message is displayed. As required, select the **Read on select** option to have the message said aloud on selection of the cell.
Attachment indicator	As required, select the **Images only** option. The attachment indicator (for example a paper clip) is only displayed if images have been added to the message as an attachment. Click ... next to the **Attachment** field to select a symbol to show there is an attachment with the message (for example: paper clip). Click ... next to the **No attachment** field to select a symbol to show no attachment has been sent with the message (by default there is no symbol for this).
Attachment cell	As required, select the **Images only** option. The attachment cell will only display pictures as attachments. Other files (such as: PowerPoint files) are not displayed.
Sent items cell	The recipient and the content of the message are displayed.

5. Click **OK**.

17.6 Adding an action for e-mail

Actions for e-mail are used to control sending e-mails.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **E-mail** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Send e-mail	To send a message.
Previous (series)	To display the previous list of message headers.
Next (series)	To display the next list of message headers.
Show newest e-mail	To display the headers of the last received messages.
Download inbox	To download the contents of the inbox in the communication grid of Mind Express.
Delete e-mail	To delete the selected message. To find the deleted messages, see Managing Inbox and deleted e-mails. on page 82.
Read selected e-mail	To read the selected message.
Select previous e-mail	To select the previous e-mail.
Select next e-mail	To select the next e-mail.
Reply to e-mail	To reply to the selected message.
Add content to message box	Add the content of the selected message to the message box. Advantage: you can use scroll here, to forward and reply with the text of the message.
Previous attachment	The attachments operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the previous attachment.
Next attachment	The attachments operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the next attachment.
Open attachment	The attachment is opened in the default program. For example, the "report.txt" attachment is opened in notepad.
Sent items: next	The sent items operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the next sent message.
Sent items: previous	The sent items operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the previous sent message.

Action	Explanation
Sent items: recent	The sent items operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the first message (i.e. the most recent) of the sent messages.
Clear selected mail	The email is deselected. The cells containing the sender, the subject and the body of the email are emptied. This comes in handy when switching between Inbox and Sent Items.

5. Click **OK**.

17.7 Add a subject to your email

The content of a cell can be used as a subject when sending your email.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **E-mail** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Send e-mail** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **E-mail address**, enter the email address.
   - **Address book**, from the drop-down list, choose the contact from the address book.
   - **Address book recipients**, the email will be sent to all the names in the cell with the list of recipients.
6. In the **Subject Cell ID** field, enter the ID of the cell of which the text must be used to be the subject of the email.
7. Click **OK**.

17.8 Add an attachment to your email

The image of a cell can be used as an attachment when sending your email. No symbols may be sent.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **E-mail** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Send e-mail** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **E-mail address**, enter the email address.
   - **Address book**, from the drop-down list, choose the contact from the address book.
   - **Address book recipients**, the email will be sent to all the names in the cell with the list of recipients.
6. In the **Attachment Cell ID** field, enter the ID of the cell of which the image must be used to be added as an attachment to the email.
7. Click **OK**.

17.9 Managing Inbox and deleted e-mails.

If the **Only receive e-mails from people from address book** option has been enabled in the e-mail settings, then e-mails from unknown senders are blocked and not displayed in a Mind Express communication grid. You can still view the e-mails you have deleted from a Mind Express communication grid, together with the blocked e-mails, by doing the following:

1. Choose **Tools** > **E-mail** > **Inbox**.
2. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Inbox	You can view all your received messages here. Including the blocked messages.
Deleted e-mails	You can view all your deleted messages here.

3. As required, click the **Check for new messages** button to display any new e-mails you have received.
4. Select a message from the list.
5. Click on one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Read	To read the message.
Save	To save the message on the computer or the device as an EML file.
Undelete	To restore the deleted message to the Inbox.

Option	Explanation
Delete	To delete the message from the Inbox or to permanently delete the message. The message has been deleted from Mind Express but is still available in your e-mail account.

18 Phonetic

18.1 Adding an action for phonetic

You can add an action that pronounces a letter or diphthong phonetically and adds it to the message box. The action enables you to playback a recording (wav file) of the phonetic sound of the letter or diphthong. You can choose the language the phonetic sound occurs in.

TIP
Phonetic actions can be used for creating phonetic keyboards.

CAUTION
*A phonetic sound in a specific language could be pronounced differently from the language that has been specified in **Tools** > **Speech...**!*

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phonetic** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Select the language from the first drop-down menu.
5. Select the letter or diphthong from the second drop-down menu.
6. If necessary, when selecting the cell, change the text to be added to the message box in the **Add to Message box:** field.
7. Click **OK**.

19 Eddy

19.1 What is the Eddy?

The Eddy is a small portable display with a built-in speaker. A bluetooth connection can be made between your device and the Eddy. You can choose whether to transmit text and/or sound. The text appears in 1, 2 or 3 text lines, depending on the settings.

Figure 1: The Eddy

19.2 Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a wireless communication technology, which operates over a short distance. No physical connection is required for bluetooth. You can exchange data over a distance of approximately 10 meters. With bluetooth it is not necessary to direct the devices towards each other. If the devices are within each other's range, data can be transferred, even if the devices are located in separate rooms.

Your device can use bluetooth to connect to other bluetooth devices. For example the Eddy or a mobile phone.

NOTE
Some devices may not always be compatible with your device.

NOTE
Objects between the devices can reduce the distance between which the devices can communicate.

19.3 Setting up the Eddy

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eddy** > **Settings**.
2. As required, select the following options:

Option	Explanation
Connect automatically when Mind Express is launched	If selected, the device will automatically try to connect to the Eddy.
Send audio	If selected, the sound will only be relayed through the speakers of the Eddy.
Send text	If selected, the text will appear on the Eddy.
Write in capital letters	If selected, the text will appear on the Eddy in capital letters.
Number of lines on display:	From the drop-down list, select how many lines of text (1, 2 or 3) you would like to see on the screen of the Eddy.

3. Click **OK**.

19.4 Finding the Eddy

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eddy** > **Connect**.
2. Tap on **Search** .
   The Eddy that has been found will appear in the drop-down list.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Tap on **OK**.
   - Connect to the Eddy. See Connecting to the Eddy (using the menu) on page 84.

19.5 Connecting to the Eddy (using the menu)

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eddy** > **Connect**.
2. Click **Connect** .
   The **Eddy** dialog appears with the message **Connected to Eddy**.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

19.6 Disconnecting from the Eddy (using the menu)

Choose **Tools** > **Eddy** > **Disconnect**.
The call to the Eddy has been disconnected.

19.7 Clearing the text on the Eddy display

Choose **Tools** > **Eddy** > **Clear text**.

20 Working with levels

20.1 Levels

You can assign three information levels to the cells in a communication grid. Each level can contain one or more actions. The label and text may vary for each level, however, the picture remains the same for each cell.

You can choose both abstract and concrete referrers (symbols) for each of the levels. For example, "name" together with action "go to level 2" is clearer than simply "level 2".

Example 1: level 2 holds the names I, you and Mom and level 3 holds the addresses.

Example 2: level 2 contains sentences (feelings) and level 3 contains questions (feelings).

20.2 Going to another level

You can add actions to the cells in a communication grid on three levels. To choose a different level, add the **Go to level** action to a cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Go to level** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Level 1	To go to level 1.
Level 2	To go to level 2.

Action	Explanation
Level 3	To go to level 3.

5. Click **OK**.

21 User

21.1 Adding an action for user

The **User** action allows the user to enable certain specific user settings. For example, you can allow the user to change the mode (mouse, scan, joystick), activate or modify the relevant dwell time, pause scanning or adjust the scan time. You can also allow the user to enable entering, checking, resetting passwords. The voice for speech can be adjusted, and another user can be logged on. The external dwell and external zoom actions make it possible to use dwell and zoom outside of Mind Express.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **User** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Selection	To change a selection setting. For example: to go to scanning mode, to increase dwell time, ...
Change voice	To change the voice of the speech, click **Select voice**. See The speech settings on page 157.
Append to password	Enter one or more characters that must be added to the password.
Reset password	To reset the password.
Check password	To check the password. The characters are added to the password using the **Append to password** action.
Change user	To select a different user.
Print page	To print the current page.
Save document	To save the current document. This allows you to save messages and quick recordings in the document.
Save document copy	To save a copy of the current document in the same folder as the current document. This can be useful for fill-in-the-blank exercises, so a supervisor can check the answers afterwards.

5. If you have chosen the **Selection** action in the first drop-down menu, then choose one of the following actions from the second drop-down list:

Action	Explanation
Go to mouse mode	To go to Mouse mode.
Go to scanning mode	To go to Scanning mode.
Go to joystick mode	To go to Joystick mode.
Go to eye tracking	To go to Eye Control mode.
Pause mouse selection	To disable the mouse selection until you click on this cell again.
Pause scanning	To disable scanning until you click on this cell again.
External dwelling: on/off	To enable or disable external dwelling.
External dwelling: on	To enable external dwell.
External dwelling: off	To disable external dwell.
External dwelling left click	To activate external dwell by left-clicking.
External dwelling right click	To activate external dwell by right-clicking.
External dwelling double click	To activate external dwell by double-clicking.
External dwelling drag and drop	To drag and drop an item using external dwell.

Action	Explanation
External zoom: once	To zoom outside Mind Express. Click the cell with the external zoom action. Then click outside Mind Express. The area you have clicked is magnified. A click in the magnified view places the cursor on the clicked position in normal view, or the action that has been clicked is performed (for example: exiting a window). This action can be used once only. To use the action again, you must click the cell again.
External zoom: on	To enable zoom outside Mind Express.
External zoom: off	To disable outside Mind Express.
Dwelling: on	To enable dwell.
Dwelling: off	To disable dwell.
Dwell time +	To increase the dwell time.
Dwell time -	To decrease the dwell time.
Scan time +	To increase the scan time.
Scan time -	To decrease the scan time.
Freestyle drag: on/off	To enable or disable the dragging action of draggable cells on a page of a Freestyle page type.
Freestyle drag: on	To enable the dragging action of draggable cells on a page of a Freestyle page type.
Freestyle drag: off	To disable the dragging action of draggable cells on a page of a Freestyle page type.
Auditory scanning: on/off	To enable or disable auditory scanning.
Auditory scanning: on	To enable auditory scanning.
Auditory scanning: off	To disable auditory scanning.

6. Click **OK**.

21.2 Moving cells on a freestyle page

You can enable or disable draggable cells to be moved by the user on a freestyle page.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **User** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Selection** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose one of the following actions from the 2nd drop-down list:

Option	Explanation
Freestyle drag: on/off	It can be made possible or not possible to drag draggable cells on the freestyle page.
Freestyle drag: on	Dragging draggable cells on the freestyle page has been made possible.
Freestyle drag: off	Dragging draggable cells on the freestyle page has not been made possible.

In Mouse mode, depending on the selected action, the user can enable or disable dragging in Freestyle so that draggable cells can or cannot be moved.

22 GEWA

22.1 Environmental control

Some devices are equipped with or can optionally be equipped with an infrared receiver and an infrared transmitter. This enables you to control devices such as televisions, radios, DVD players using infrared codes. Mind Express can learn to recognize the devices' infrared codes. The infrared receiver and transmitter can be one of the following types:

- GEWA
- JabblaIR
- Tira

To configure the infrared codes of the following type:

- GEWA, see Recording a GEWA infrared code on page 87
- JabblaIR and Tira, see Recording an infrared code on page 88

22.2 COM Port settings for GEWA

1. Choose **Tools** > **GEWA** > **Settings**.
2. From the **COM Port** drop-down list, select the port to be used for GEWA.
3. Click **OK**.

22.3 Recording a GEWA infrared code

1. Choose **Tools** > **GEWA** > **Record**.
2. Selecting an infrared code from the dialog **GEWA**
3. In the **Enter new name:** field, enter the name of the infrared code.
   Example: Television louder
4. Hold the remote control of the relevant device (for example, the TV remote control) at a distance of approximately 5 cm from the device's infrared receiver (Smart, Tellus, Mobi, ...)
5. Click **Record**.
   The **Status** field will display the message **Press key and hold**.
6. Press the button of your remote control for the code you want the IR module to record (in this case the IR code for television volume up).
7. Hold and press until the red light in the IR window switches off or until the **Release key** message appears in the **Status** field.
8. Repeat the previous 2 steps to link the code a second time.
   The red lamp will flash briefly to confirm that the record procedure has been completed successfully. The **Status** field will display the message **OK**. If **Error** appears, repeat the procedure starting from step 5.
9. Point your device (Smart, Tellus, Mobi, ...) towards the device of which you want to test the infrared code.
10. Click **Test**.
    If the infrared code actually carries out the requested command, then the test is OK. If not, then the code needs to be recorded again.
11. Repeat from step 2 to record more infrared codes.
12. Click **OK**.

See also

Transmitting a GEWA infrared code on page 88

22.4 Creating a backup file of GEWA infrared codes

You can create a backup of the infrared codes so they can be restored should there be any problems. A backup can be useful if the device is used in different locations. You can record the infrared codes for location A. You create a backup. Do the same for location B. By restoring a backup you can switch between the infrared codes, depending on the location.

1. Choose **Tools** > **GEWA** > **Backup**.
2. In the **Enter new name:** field, enter the name of the backup.
   Example: Home
3. Click **OK**.
4. Click **Yes** in the dialog. **Backup**

   NOTE
   It may take a few minutes to create a backup.

   The backup is being created.

See also

Restoring a backup file of GEWA infrared codes on page 87

22.5 Restoring a backup file of GEWA infrared codes

You can create a backup of the infrared codes so they can be restored should there be any problems. A backup can be useful if the device is used in different locations. You can record the infrared codes for location A. You create a backup. Do the same for location B. By restoring a backup you can switch between the infrared codes, depending on the location.

1. Choose **Tools** > **GEWA** > **Restore backup**.
2. In the **Choose backup** list, click on the name of the backup you want to restore.

   NOTE
   It may take a few minutes to restore a backup.

3. Click **OK**.

The backup is being restored.

See also

Creating a backup file of GEWA infrared codes on page 87

22.6 Transmitting a GEWA infrared code

To transmit IR codes with Mind Express, you must add a GEWA action to a cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **GEWA** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Type command	If the user is familiar with the GEWA commands, then you can enter the GEWA command in the field below the drop-down list.
Pause	Enter the length of the pause to be added in between two consecutive infrared codes. For example, when selecting TV channel 39, make sure there is a pause between 3 and 9, so that 39 is transmitted.
gw1 ... gw150	Select the GEWA code from the list and in the **Repeat:** field, enter the number of times the code is to be transmitted. For example infrared codes for volume control.

5. Click **OK**.

See also

Recording a GEWA infrared code on page 87

23 Environmental control

23.1 Environmental control

Some devices are equipped with or can optionally be equipped with an infrared receiver and an infrared transmitter. This enables you to control devices such as televisions, radios, DVD players using infrared codes. Mind Express can learn to recognize the devices' infrared codes. The infrared receiver and transmitter can be one of the following types:

- GEWA
- JabblaIR
- Tira

To configure the infrared codes of the following type:

- GEWA, see Recording a GEWA infrared code on page 87
- JabblaIR and Tira, see Recording an infrared code on page 88

23.2 The environmental control settings

1. Choose **Tools** > **Environmental Control** > **Settings**.
2. From the **Type:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Tira**
   - **JabblaIR**
3. From the **COM Port:** drop-down list, select the port to be used for Tira.

NOTE
You should not specify a COM Port for JabblaIR.

23.3 Recording an infrared code

1. Choose **Tools** > **Environmental Control** > **Record**.
2. In the **Name:** field, enter the name of the infrared code.
   Example: Television louder
3. Hold the remote control of the relevant device (for example, the TV remote control) at a distance of approximately 5 cm from the device (provided with Mind Express).
4. Click **Record**.
   The **Status:** field will display the message **Press key**.

5. Briefly press the button of the remote control (for example, the volume up button).
   The **Status:** field will display the message **OK**. If **Error** appears, repeat the procedure starting from step 3.
6. Point the device (with the Mind Express) towards the device of which you want to test the infrared code.
7. Click **Test**.
   If the infrared code actually carries out the requested command, then the test is OK. If not, then the code needs to be recorded again.
8. Repeat from step 2 to record more infrared codes.
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Transmitting an infrared code on page 90

23.4 Teaching an infrared code (in Edit mode)

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Environmental Control** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **New...** from the first drop-down list.
5. Hold the remote control of the relevant device (for example, the TV remote control) at a distance of approximately 5 cm from the device (provided with Mind Express).
6. Click **Record**.
   The **Status:** field will display the message **Press key**.
7. Briefly press the button of the remote control (for example, the volume up button).
   The **Status:** field will display the message **OK**. If **Error** appears, repeat the procedure starting from step 5.
8. Point the device (with the Mind Express) towards the device of which you want to test the infrared code.
9. Click **Test**.
   If the infrared code actually carries out the requested command, then the test is OK. If not, then the code needs to be recorded again.
10. Click **OK**.

23.5 Creating a backup of the infrared codes

You can create a backup of the infrared codes so they can be restored should there be any problems. A backup can be useful if the device is used in different locations. You can record the infrared codes for location A. You create a backup. Do the same for location B. By restoring a backup you can switch between the infrared codes, depending on the location.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Environmental Control** > **Backup**.
2. In the **Enter new name:** field, enter the name of the backup.
   Example: Home
3. Click **OK**.
4. Click **Yes** in the dialog. **Backup**

   NOTE
   It may take a few minutes to create a backup.

   The backup is being created.

See also

Restoring a backup of the infrared codes on page 89
Transferring backup files to different devices on page 90

23.6 Restoring a backup of the infrared codes

You can create a backup of the infrared codes so they can be restored should there be any problems. A backup can be useful if the device is used in different locations. You can record the infrared codes for location A. You create a backup. Do the same for location B. By restoring a backup you can switch between the infrared codes, depending on the location.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Environmental Control** > **Restore Backup**.
2. In the **Choose backup:** list, click on the name of the backup you want to restore.

   NOTE
   It may take a few minutes to restore a backup.

3. Click **OK**.
   The backup is being restored.

See also

Creating a backup of the infrared codes on page 89
Transferring backup files to different devices on page 90

23.7 Transferring backup files to different devices

If a remote control in a building needs to be used by several users, the infrared codes can be recorded all together on one device, and then transferred to other devices.

NOTE
Backups of GEWA, Tira and JabblaIR are NOT interchangeable!

1. Recording the infrared codes onto one device. See Recording an infrared code on page 88
2. Creating a backup of the infrared codes. See Creating a backup of the infrared codes on page 89
3. Copying the backup file. The file is located in the following folder `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\PluginData` and depends on the infrared receiver-transmitter used:

Infrared Type	File (*=name backup file)
GEWA	`Plugins.GEWA.Backup.*.xml`
JabblaIR	`Plugins.JabblaIR.Backup.*.xml`
Tira	`Plugins.Tira.Backup.*.xml`

4. Paste the file into the same folder on the other device.
5. Restore the backup file. See Restoring a backup of the infrared codes on page 89.

See also

Creating a backup of the infrared codes on page 89
Restoring a backup of the infrared codes on page 89

23.8 Transmitting an infrared code

To transmit IR codes with Mind Express, you must add an environmental control action to a cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Environmental Control** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Type command	If the user is familiar with the Tira commands, then you can enter the Tira command in the field below the drop-down list.
New...	You can teach an infrared code while editing the communication grid. See also
Pause	Enter the length of the pause to be added in between two consecutive infrared codes. For example, when selecting TV channel 39, make sure there is a pause between 3 and 9, so that 39 is transmitted.
JabblaIR code or Tira code	Select the JabblaIR or the Tira code from the list and in the **Repeat:** field, enter the number of times the code is to be transmitted. For example infrared codes for volume control.

NOTE
Entering a command cannot be used for JabblaIR.

See also

Recording an infrared code on page 88

24 Internet

24.1 The Internet home page settings

In Mind Express you can specify one home page. The **Navigate to homepage** action will take the user to this home page.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Internet** > **Settings**.
2. In the **Homepage:** field, enter the Internet address you want to define as the home page.

TIP
You do not need to enter http://.

3. Click **OK**.

24.2 Setting and using a black list

To make sure the user cannot visit certain web pages, you can compile a black list of Internet addresses that are NOT permitted. If an attempt is made to visit web pages that are on the black list, then nothing happens and the current web page continues to be displayed.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Internet** > **Settings**.
2. Choose **Use blacklist** from the drop-down list.
3. In the bottom field, enter the permitted Internet address.

TIP
You do not need to enter http://.

4. Click .
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add Internet addresses to the black list.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Setting and using a white list on page 91
Disabling the Internet filter on page 91

24.3 Setting and using a white list

To make sure the user can only visit a certain number of web pages, you can compile a white list of permitted Internet addresses. If an attempt is made to visit web pages that are not on the white list, then nothing happens and the current web page continues to be displayed.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Internet** > **Settings**.
2. Choose **Use whitelist** from the drop-down list.
3. In the bottom field, enter the permitted Internet address.

TIP
You do not need to enter http://.

4. Click .
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add Internet addresses to the white list.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Setting and using a black list on page 91
Disabling the Internet filter on page 91

24.4 Disabling the Internet filter

Browsing the Internet can be restricted by using a white list or a black list. The white list contains the web pages that are allowed to be visited, the black list contains the web pages that are NOT allowed to be visited. Only one of the lists can be used. Alternatively, you can choose not to use the lists. In that case the user can browse any web page.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Internet** > **Settings**.
2. Choose **No filter** from the drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.

See also

Setting and using a white list on page 91
Setting and using a black list on page 91

24.5 Internet favorites settings

In Mind Express you can specify your favorite web pages. In a communication grid the favorites can be displayed by using an **Internet** cell type.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Internet** > **Favourites**.
2. Click .
3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the favorite.
4. In the **URL** field, enter the Internet address of the web page.

TIP
*You do not need to enter http://. You can also copy the URL from the address bar of a browser and paste it into the **URL** field.*

5. Click **OK**.
6. Select a favorite and as required, click on one of the following buttons to further organize your favorites.

Button	Explanation
	To edit the favorite. As required, change the **Name** or the **URL** of the favorite.
	To delete the favorite.
	To move the favorite up the list of favorites.
	To move the favorite down the list of favorites.

7. Click **OK**.

24.6 Creating an Internet cell

You can display information in the Internet cells. This could be the Internet address, the web page, links on the page, favorites.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Select **Internet** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Internet cell	This cell displays the web page.
Browse through links	This cell displays a link on the web page.
Browse through favourites	This cell displays a favorite from the Favorites list. See Internet favorites settings on page 91.
Internet address	This cell displays the URL, which is the Internet address of the web page.

5. Click **OK**.

24.7 Adding a navigate action for Internet

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Internet** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Navigate** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Navigate to URL	To go to a specified Internet address. Enter the Internet address in the field below the second drop-down list.
Navigate to homepage	To go to the home page. To set the home page, see The Internet home page settings on page 90.
Navigate to URL in message box	To go to the Internet address that has been entered in the message box.
Next	To go to the next web page visited.
Previous	To go to the previous web page visited.
Stop	To stop a web page from loading.
Refresh	To refresh the web page.

6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a scroll action for Internet on page 93
Adding an element action for Internet on page 93
Adding a favorites action for Internet on page 94
Adding a type action for Internet on page 94

24.8 Adding a scroll action for Internet

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Internet** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Scroll** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Scroll up	To move the web page up. Can only be used if the height of the web page is not completely visible.
Scroll down	To move the web page down. Can only be used if the height of the web page is not completely visible.
Scroll left	To move the web page to the left. Can only be used if the width of the web page is not completely visible.
Scroll right	To move the web page to the right. Can only be used if the width of the web page is not completely visible.
Zoom in	To zoom to the web page.
Zoom out	To zoom out of the web page.
Reset zoom	To restore the web page to 100%.

6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a navigate action for Internet on page 92
Adding an element action for Internet on page 93
Adding a favorites action for Internet on page 94
Adding a type action for Internet on page 94

24.9 Adding an element action for Internet

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Internet** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Elements** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Next elements (in list)	The next list of elements is displayed in the list of clickable elements.
Next element (in internet)	The selection moves to the next clickable element on the Internet page.
Previous elements (in list)	The previous list of elements is displayed in the list of clickable elements.
Previous element (in internet)	The selection moves to the previous clickable element on the Internet page.
Click current element	The active (selected) element on the Internet page is clicked.
Read current element	The active (selected) element on the Internet page is read out loud. Edit boxes and forms are also read out loud.

See also

Adding a navigate action for Internet on page 92
Adding a scroll action for Internet on page 93
Adding a favorites action for Internet on page 94

Adding a type action for Internet on page 94

24.10 Adding a favorites action for Internet

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Internet** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Favourites** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Next favourites	To display the next favorites.
Previous favourites	To display the previous favorites.
Add current page	Add the current web page to the favorites. The title of the web page appears in the Internet cell for favorites.
Remove current page	Remove the current web page from the favorites.

6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a navigate action for Internet on page 92
Adding a scroll action for Internet on page 93
Adding an element action for Internet on page 93
Adding a type action for Internet on page 94

24.11 Adding a type action for Internet

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Internet** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Typing** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Send to input	This action can be used to create a keyboard that sends letters of specific keys such as Up Arrow, space, home, end, ...to the active input cell.
Activate: on/off	Select one of the following options: ▪ **Activate: on** ▪ **Activate: off** ▪ **Activate: on/off** When activated, you allow the letters to be added to the active input cell using a classic keyboard.
Send message box to input	To send the message to the active input cell.
Send URL to message box	To send the active Internet address to the message.

6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a navigate action for Internet on page 92
Adding a scroll action for Internet on page 93
Adding an element action for Internet on page 93
Adding a favorites action for Internet on page 94

25 Log

25.1 Logs

In Mind Express, any actions performed on a page can be saved to a log file. The log results can be visualized in the communication grid. This enables the supervisor to analyze the communication grid and make improvements. The log files can also be exported as a text or CSV file for further analysis.

For example: The supervisor has created a new communication grid. After viewing the log, the supervisor can determine which cells have been clicked frequently or infrequently by the user. Based on this log information, the supervisor can personalize the communication grid by grouping the frequently-used cells and putting them together on the first page. This makes the communication grid more user-friendly.

25.2 Enable logging

1. Choose **Tools** > **Log** > **Toggle logging**.
2. To switch logging off, repeat step 1.

See also

Analyzing click behavior on the current page on page 95

25.3 Analyzing click behavior on the current page

In Mind Express you can analyze the click behavior on the current page. During the analysis the cells that are clicked are no longer logged.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Log** > **Analyse frequency (current page)**.
   The darker the color of the cells, the more they have been clicked. Cells that are pale yellow were not clicked on.
2. To switch off analyzing, repeat step 1.

See also

Enable logging on page 95

25.4 Deleting the log file

A log file can be deleted.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Log** > **Delete entire log**.
2. Confirm in the **Delete entire log** dialog.

See also

Exporting the log file on page 95

25.5 Exporting the log file

The log file can be exported as a text file (.txt) or as a CSV file (.csv). The exported file can be further analyzed in other programs. For example: a CSV file can be opened in Excel for further analyzing. The following information can be found in the log file:

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	7	3	I have a dog
2	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	7	4	grandma comes tomorrow
3	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	5	5	afraid
4	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	4	3	be
5	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I
6	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	5	4	sad
7	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	4	3	be
8	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I
9	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	5	3	happy
10	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	4	3	be
11	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I
12	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	3	6	come
13	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I
14	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	3	5	want
15	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I
16	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	3	4	drink
17	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I
18	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	3	3	eat
19	14/10/2016 11:04	Voca_Message Box	#1#	2	3	I

Column	Data
A	Date and time
B	Document name
C	Page title
D	Column on the communication grid
E	Row on the communication grid
F	Label of log text

NOTE

If a cell is made up of several cells, the row and column in the log file are displayed starting from the top left corner of the cell.

NOTE
*If the **Freestyle** page type is used, the coordinate for the top left corner of the cell is displayed on a scale of 100.*

1. Choose **Tools** > **Log** > **Export**.
2. Enter the name of the file in the **Filename** field.
3. From the **Save as** drop-down list, select the file type:
   - **Text Documents (*.txt)**
   - **CSV Files (*.csv)**
4. Click **Save**.

See also

Deleting the log file on page 95

25.6 Registering the cursor movements

The cursor movements can be registered in a heatmap.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Log** > **Map Mouse**.
2. To turn off registration, repeat step 1.

25.7 Displaying the registered cursor movements (heatmap)

1. Choose **Tools** > **Log** > **Show Mouse Mapping**.
   The heatmap appears as an image.
2. Click the heatmap to return to the page.

25.8 Creating a log cell

You can display the logged information in the log cell. Only the label or log text is displayed.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Log** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. In the **Number of Log items:** field enter the number of logs you want to display.

   NOTE
   The number of visible logs depends on the size of the cell and the size of the font selected.

5. In the **Separator:** field, enter the character that you want to place in between the different logs.

   TIP
   Enter ## to display each log on a new line!

6. Click **OK**.

25.9 Adding an action for logs

A log action is used to control the logs.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Log** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Turn on	To turn on logging.
Turn off	To turn off logging.
Toggle logging	To turn logging on/off.
Delete entire log	To delete the log file.
Log custom text	To create a log of the text you enter in the field below the drop-down list. A log is made of this text, not of the label.
Log message	To add the entire message to the log file. For example, the supervisor can add additional text and explanations to the message, and then add this to the log file with this action.
Delete X items	To delete a log. In the field below the drop-down list, enter how many logs you want to delete.
Export	To export the log file.
Analyse frequency: On	To visually display the frequency with which cells were selected while logging. The darker the cell is displayed, the more frequently it was selected.
Analyse frequency: Off	To visually NOT display the frequency with which cells were selected while logging.
Analyse frequency: Toggle	To visually display or NOT display the frequency with which cells were selected while logging. The darker the cell is displayed, the more frequently it was selected.
Map Mouse: On	To switch on registration of the mouse movements.
Map Mouse: Off	To switch off registration of the mouse movements.
Map Mouse: Toggle	To switch registration of the mouse movements on or off.
Show Mouse Mapping	To display the registered mouse movements with a heat map. The redder, the more the mouse has been registered in this position.

5. Click **OK**.

26 Music And Video

26.1 Playing music

You can add an action that plays a specific music file.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Open File** from the drop-down list.
5. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following locations:
   - **From media library**
   - **From folder**
6. Click on ..., and select the music file.
7. Click **OK**.

26.2 Adding an action for music

An action for music is used to control the music.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Play	To play the selected music.

Action	Explanation
Pause	To pause the selected music.
Stop	To stop the selected music.
Fast forward	To fast forward.
Backward	To rewind.

5. Click **OK**.

26.3 Creating a music playlist

You can create a playlist of your favorite songs to scroll through. If a thumbnail is available in the music clip, it is automatically displayed in the cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Browse through folder	Choose this option if the files were not imported into the media library, but are saved in a folder on your device.
Browse through media library folder	Choose this option to play files from the media library.

5. Click on ... and select the folder or media library.
6. Click **OK**.

TIP
*To display an image in the cell different from the thumbnail of the music file, add an image with the same name to the music file. For example: the **Music And Video** type cell contains the `pink_panther.mp3` music file and shows the `pink_panther.jpg` image. In the media library, you CANNOT add an image directly to the **Music Video** folder. Do this from Explorer or use files that are not in the Media Library.*

NOTE
*By making multiple **Music And Video** type cells next to each other, you can display the folder structure on the communication grid. By clicking on a cell with a folder subfolders and files are displayed in the cells of the **Music And Video** type. Using the cell, you can view higher-level folders and files again.*

TIP
The default view of the music, video, folder and back cells can be adjusted. Open the folder `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\PluginData` and replace the files `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Sound`, `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Movie`, `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Folder`, `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Back` with your own bmp, jpeg, jpg, png, gif or wmf file. The file name must be maintained (for example `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Sound`). The file name is not case sensitive.

See also

Adding an action for a music playlist on page 98

26.4 Adding an action for a music playlist

Actions for music playlists are used to control the selected music playlists. These actions are part of the actions for **Music And Video**.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Play Stream	To play MP3 streams. These are actually MP3 files on the Internet, with music that is continuously added. In the cell below the drop-down list, enter the URL of the stream. Only one stream can be played at a time. To play a different stream, the previous stream must first be stopped with the **Stop** action. Some examples: ▪ http://media-ice.musicradio.com/HeartLondonMP3 ▪ http://media-ice.musicradio.com/ClassicFMMP3, ▪ http://ice.somafm.com/groovesalad-56.mp3

Action	Explanation
Start playlist	To start playing a playlist. Only type pls and m3u playlists can be used, but you can also select a folder that will play all media files. The media files are played in a set order.
Start playlist (Shuffle)	To start playing a playlist. Only type pls and m3u playlists can be used, but you can also select a folder that will play all media files. The media files are played in a random order.
Next	To scroll forward through the list of music files.
Previous	To scroll backward through the list of music files.
Go to first	To go to the first music file on the list.

5. From the following drop-down list, select the location where the music files have been stored.
6. Click on ... and select the folder or playlist.
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a music playlist on page 98

26.5 Creating a video cell

You can play the selected video through the video cell.

NOTE
A communication grid can only contain 1 video cell per page.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

TIP
You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Choose the **Video cell** option.
5. Click **OK**.

26.6 Adding an action for video

An action for video is used to control the selected video.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Play	To play (back) the selected video.
Pause	To pause the selected video.
Stop	To stop the selected video.
Fast forward	Fast forward.
Backward	Rewind

5. Click **OK**.

26.7 Creating a video play list

You can create a playlist of your favorite videos and scroll through them. A frame from the video is automatically displayed in the cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Browse through folder	Choose this option if the files were not imported into the media library, but are saved in a folder on your device.
Browse through media library folder	Choose this option to play files from the media library.

To display a different image in the cell than the frame from the video, add a JPG format image with the same name as the video and in the same folder as the video. This only works for a video that was NOT imported into the media library.

5. Click on ... and select the folder or media library.

TIP
*To display an image in the cell different from the frame from the video, add an image with the same name to the video file. For example: the **Music And Video** type cell contains the `pink_panther.wmv` video file and shows the `pink_panther.jpg` image. In the media library, you CANNOT add an image directly to the **Music Video** folder. Do this from Explorer or use files that are not in the Media Library.*

6. Click **OK**.

NOTE
*By making multiple **Music And Video** type cells next to each other, you can display the folder structure on the communication grid. By clicking on a cell with a folder subfolders and files are displayed in the cells of the **Music And Video** type. Using the cell, you can view higher-level folders and files again.*

TIP
The default view of the music, video, folder and back cells can be adjusted. Open the folder `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\PluginData` and replace the files `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Sound`, `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Movie`, `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Folder`, `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Back` with your own bmp, jpeg, jpg, png, gif or wmf file. The file name must be maintained (for example `Plugins.Media.Symbol.Sound`). The file name is not case sensitive.

See also

Adding an action for a video playlist on page 100

26.8 Adding an action for a video playlist

Actions for video playlists are used to control the selected video playlists. These actions are part of the actions for **Music And Video**.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Music And Video** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Start playlist	To start playing a playlist. Only type pls and m3u playlists can be used, but you can also select a folder that will play all media files.
Next	To scroll forward through the list of video files.
Previous	To scroll backward through the list of video files.
Go to first	To go to the first video file on the list.

5. From the following drop-down list, select the location where the video files have been stored.
6. Click on ... and select the folder or playlist.
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a video play list on page 99

26.9 Starting, pausing, stopping, fast-forwarding or rewinding the music or video

Choose **Tools** > **Music And Video** and select one of the following options:

- **Play**
- **Pause**
- **Stop**
- **Fast forward**
- **Backward**

27 Comparing pages and cells

27.1 Comparing pages

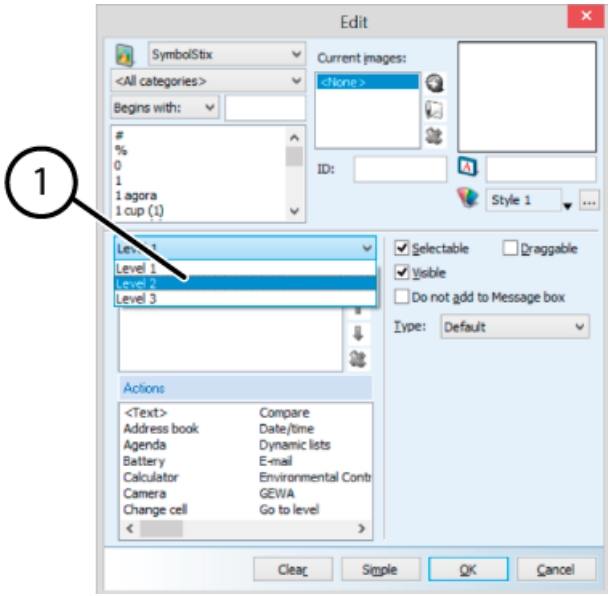
The action is useful for comparing games and exercises. You can do the following:

- Compare pages.
- Compare cells.

At level 2, the action is included if the pages or cells are identical. At level 3, the action is included if the pages or cells are not identical.

See Working with levels on page 84.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Compare** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Compare pages** from the drop-down list.
5. From the **If** drop-down list select the page you want to compare.
6. From the **equals** drop-down list select the page you want to compare it to.
7. Choose **Level 2** from the drop-down list (1).



8. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
9. Add an action.
   This action is performed if the 2 pages are equal to each other.
10. Choose **Level 3** from the drop-down list (1).
11. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
12. Add an action.
    This action is performed if the 2 pages are NOT equal to each other.
13. Click **OK**.

See also

Comparing cells on page 101

27.2 Comparing cells

The action is useful for comparing games and exercises. You can do the following:

- Compare pages.
- Compare cells.

At level 2, the action is included if the pages or cells are identical. At level 3, the action is included if the pages or cells are not identical.

See Working with levels on page 84.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Compare** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Compare cells (with ID)** from the drop-down list.
5. In the **If** field, enter the ID of the cell you want to compare.

6. In the **equals** field, choose the ID of the cell you want to compare.
7. From the drop-down list, select **Level 2** in the top of the **Actions** options group.
8. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
9. Add an action.
   This action is performed if the 2 cells are equal to each other.
10. From the drop-down list, select **Level 3** in the top of the **Actions** options group.
11. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
12. Add an action.
    This action is performed if the 2 cells are NOT equal to each other.
13. Click **OK**.

See also

Comparing pages on page 100

28 Calculator

28.1 Adding an action for calculator

An action for calculator is used to add digits and to perform operations.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. From the **Actions** drop-down list, choose the **Calculator** action.
4. In the **operations** field enter the digit of the operation.

Enter	Explanation
0-9	The numbers 0 to 9
+	add up
-	subtract
*****	multiply
/	share
^	to the power of
=	equals
@	square root
R	fraction 1/x
i	+/-
C	Clear All
B	Delete a digit or operation
?	The complete operation is read aloud.

5. Click **OK**.

28.2 Adding a calculator cell

This allows you to create the "display" or the screen of the calculator. You can use this cell to display the digits entered, operations and the result; as required you can have it all said aloud.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Calculator** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. As required, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Show Result Only	Only the result of the operation is displayed. If this option has not been selected, then the complete operation appears in the cell before the result.
Read out operations	The operations are said aloud.

Option	Explanation
Reset at Pageload	The result is cleared when the page is loaded.
Write result in the messagebox	The result of the operation is written in the message box after you have selected the cell before the result.

5. Click **OK**.

28.3 Creating a calculator

1. Create a new file. See Creating a new document on page 32.
2. Edit the cell (**F5**).
3. Type the digit or the operation in the label.
4. Adjust the style so the label is displayed in the center of the cell and with a larger font (for example 72).
5. From the **Actions** drop-down list, choose the **Calculator** action.
6. In the **operations** field enter the digit of the operation.

Enter	Explanation
0-9	The numbers 0 to 9
+	add up
-	subtract
*****	multiply
/	share
^	to the power of
=	equals
@	square root
R	fraction 1/x
i	+/-
C	Clear All
B	Delete a digit or operation
?	The complete operation is read aloud.

7. Click **OK**.
8. Repeat step 2 to 7 for the other cells.

TIP
Also add cells that allow you to clear a digit, clear the operation or everything!

9. Edit the cell (**F5**).

TIP
Make the result cell larger than the other cells!

10. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
11. Choose **Calculator** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
12. As required, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Show Result Only	Only the result of the operation is displayed. If this option has not been selected, then the complete operation appears in the cell before the result.
Read out operations	The operations are said aloud.
Reset at Pageload	The result is cleared when the page is loaded.
Write result in the messagebox	The result of the operation is written in the message box after you have selected the cell before the result.

13. Click **OK**.

29 Running a program

29.1 Running a program from Mind Express

Mind Express allows you to run other programs from your computer or device.

NOTE
Please note that this means the user is working outside of Mind Express! This action is not suitable for all users!

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Run application** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Click ...
5. Select the program and click **Open**.
   Example: WINWORD.EXE
6. Click **OK**.

30 Phone functions

30.1 Calls and SMS messages

Some devices can be equipped with a SIM card, allowing calls and SMS messages to be sent and received directly from the device. If the computer or device has not been supplied with a SIM card, you can connect to your mobile phone using either a wireless connection (Bluetooth) or a cable. This enables you to make calls using the mobile phone and send or receive SMS messages using the computer or device.

You can use Mind Express to send SMS messages and to call from the sample files or you can make your own phone files. Messages are compiled and sent with the symbol pages and received text messages are said aloud. You can also call, receive calls and hang up the phone.

NOTE
Some devices do not have the necessary software to make calls or send SMS messages.

30.2 The phone in Mind Express

1. Choose **Tools** > **Phone** > **Settings**.
2. As required, enter the SIM card pin code in the **Pin:** field.
   If you are using bluetooth, you do not need to enter a PIN code.
3. The correct port is automatically suggested for most devices. For other devices, select **Port:** from the drop-down menu, the correct port and/or enter the correct MAC address in the **MAC address:** field.
4. As required, select the following options:

Option	Explanation
Connect at startup	When Mind Express is started up, an automatic connection is established with the telephone.
Show additional info	Additional information is displayed on the screen when using the telephone functions.

   With some devices you can select the **Notification on incoming call** option.
5. Click **OK**.

30.3 Calling a telephone number

1. Choose **Tools** > **Phone** > **Call**.
2. Enter the telephone number and click **OK**.

30.4 Answering or ending a call

Choose **Tools** > **Phone** and select one of the following options:

- **Hang up**
- **Answer**

30.5 Sending SMS messages

From the menu you can send a message, read, reply, delete, check for new messages, view the previous or next message.

Choose **Tools** > **Phone** and select one of the following options:

- **Send**
- **Read message**
- **Download messages**
- **Read previous**
- **Read next**
- **Delete**, to delete the current SMS message.
- **Delete all**, to delete all SMS messages.
- **Reply**

30.6 Restoring a backup of the text messages

A backup is only created when the data changes.

1. Go to `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\PluginData`.
2. Sort the files by name.
3. Delete the `Plugins.GSM.SmsList.xml` file.
4. Find the files you want to restore.
   Example: `Plugins.GSM.SmsList.~3.xml`
5. Change the name of the file to `Plugins.GSM.SmsList.xml`.
6. Reboot Mind Express.

30.7 Adding an action to call a contact

For people from the address book who are regularly called, or if the user is unable to remember or compile the enter number, you can add an action to a cell for calling the contact from the address book.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Call** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Call number** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **Telephone number** from the third drop-down list.
7. Enter the enter number of the contact in the edit box below the drop-down list.
8. Click **OK**.

30.8 Adding an action to call a number entered

To enable the user to call a number independently, you can create a numeric keypad. The compiled number is displayed in the message box. To call the number, add the action for dialing the number that was compiled in the message box, to a cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Call** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Call number** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **From message box** from the third drop-down list.
7. Click **OK**.

30.9 Adding an action to call a recipient

You can combine the phone function with the address book. You can use the **Go to page** (or **Open document**) action to allow the user to select a person from the address book. The selected person is the recipient. You can use the **List of recipients** action to call this person.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Call** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Call number** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **List of recipients** from the third drop-down list.
7. Click **OK**.

30.10 Adding an action to call a contact from the address book

For people who are regularly called, or if the user is unable to remember or compile an enter number, you can add an action to a cell for calling the contact from the address book.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Call** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Call number** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **Address book** from the third drop-down list.
7. From the fourth drop-down list, select the name of the contact.
8. Click **OK**.

30.11 Adding an action for phone

Actions for phones are used to control the phone functions.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Message	To select actions that are related to messages.
Call	To select actions that are related to calling.
Init/Reset	To re-establish a connection between Bluetooth and the device.
Disconnect	To disconnect a connection between Bluetooth and the device.
DTMF Sound	To enable pressing numbers during a call. For example, when using voice mail.
Custom Command	To send AT commands to the phone. Only to be used by persons who have the necessary technical skills.

5. If you have selected:
   - **Message**, see Adding an action for messages on page 106.
   - **Call**, see Adding an action for calling on page 107.
6. Click **OK**.

30.12 Adding an action for messages

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Message** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Delete message	To delete the selected message.
Delete all messages	To delete all messages.
Check for new messages	To check for new messages.
Read message	To read the selected message.
Previous message	The messages operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the previous item.
Next message	The messages operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the next item.
Reply to message	To reply to the current message.
Send message	To send the message.

Action	Explanation
Show newest message	The incoming messages operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the first set of incoming messages.
Next (series)	The incoming messages operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the next set of incoming messages.
Previous (series)	The incoming messages operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the previous set of incoming messages.
Sent items: recent	The sent items operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the first set of sent messages.
Sent items: next	The sent items operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the next set of sent messages.
Sent items: previous	The sent items operate as a dynamic list. This action takes you to the previous set of sent messages.
List of conversations: Next	To display the next conversation in the conversation overview.
List of conversations: Previous	To display the previous conversation in the conversation overview.
List of conversations: Top	To display the first conversation in the conversation overview.
Conversation: Next	To display the next message of a conversation.
Conversation: Previous	To display the previous message of a conversation.
Conversation: Top	To display the first message of a conversation.

6. Click **OK**.

30.13 Adding an action for calling

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Call** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the second drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Call number	Choose this action to call a number.
Answer	Choose this action to answer the phone.
Hang up	Choose this action to hang up the phone.

6. Click **OK**.

30.14 Adding an action to send an SMS message to a recipient

You can combine the phone function with the address book. You can use the **Go to page** (or **Open document**) action to allow the user to select persons from the address book. The selected persons are the list of recipients. You can use the **List of recipients** action to send these persons an SMS message.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Message** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Send message** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **List of recipients** from the third drop-down list.
7. Click **OK**.

30.15 Adding an action to send a text message to a contact from the address book

For people from the address book that are regularly sent text messages, you can add an action to a cell to send the entered message to the person from the address book.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

4. Choose **Message** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Send message** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **Address book** from the third drop-down list.
7. From the fourth drop-down list, select the name of the contact.
8. Click **OK**.

30.16 Adding an action to send a message to a specific number

You can add an action to a cell for calling a specific number, which has not been added to a person in the address book, but still needs to be called, without the need for the user to remember the telephone number or to compile it.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Message** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Send message** from the second drop-down list.
6. Choose **Telephone number** from the third drop-down list.
7. Enter the number in the edit box below the drop-down list.
8. Click **OK**.

30.17 Adding an action to check for new messages

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Message** from the first drop-down list.
5. Choose **Check for new messages** from the second drop-down list.
6. Hold down the **Ctrl** key and click on next to the action list.
   The selected **Check for new messages** action was copied and added as a new action.
7. Change the copied action. Select **Show newest message** from the 2nd drop-down list:
8. Click **OK**.

30.18 Creating a phone cell

You can display information in the phone cells (and as required, have it said aloud):

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Phone** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Inbox cell	The sender and the content of the message are displayed.
Number of messages	The total number of messages in the Inbox is displayed.
Show message sender	The sender of the selected message is displayed.
Show message date	The date of the selected message is displayed.
Show message content	The content of the selected message is displayed.
Sent items cell	The recipient and the content of the message are displayed.
List of conversations	To display a summary of the messages. The date, sender, and a part of the last conversation are displayed.
Conversation	To display the conversation. Add several of these cells to display the various messages of the conversation.

5. As required, deselect the **Read on select** option if you do not want the message read aloud when selected. This option is selected by default.
6. Click **OK**.

31 Dynamic lists

31.1 Dynamic lists

Dynamic lists can be used in a communication grid. This allows more words to be added to a grid than can be displayed on the screen. The remainder of the words from the list can be displayed.

Examples of dynamic lists: persons, verbs, feelings, colors, fruit, vegetables.

31.2 Creating a dynamic list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Dynamic lists**.
2. Click .
3. Enter the name of the dynamic list.
4. Select the location you want to save the dynamic list to:
   - **Location: Current Document**, the dynamic list is only available in that specific document.
   - **Location: Mind Express**, the dynamic list is saved on the device and can be used for all documents that are opened on the device.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Do one of the following:

Click	Explanation
	To add an item to the dynamic list. See Adding an item to a dynamic list on page 109.
	To add multiple items to the dynamic list. See Adding multiple items to a dynamic list on page 110.

7. Click **OK**.
   A dynamic list that is saved in Mind Express is shown as (*).
8. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding an item to a dynamic list on page 109
Adding multiple items to a dynamic list on page 110
Sorting items in a dynamic list on page 110
Deleting an item from a dynamic list on page 110
Adjusting the contents of a dynamic list on page 111

31.3 Editing a dynamic list (method 1)

Dynamic lists on the current page are easy to edit by following the method below.

To edit dynamic lists that are on a different page, see Editing a dynamic list (method 2) on page 109.

1. Choose **Go to editor...** > **Edit mode** (or press **F2**).
2. Right-click a cell on the dynamic list and choose **Dynamic list editor**.

31.4 Editing a dynamic list (method 2)

Dynamic lists that are on a different page can only be edited by following the method below.

To edit dynamic lists that are on the current page, see Editing a dynamic list (method 1) on page 109.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Dynamic lists**.
2. Select the dynamic list from the **Dynamic list editor** dialog.
3. Click **Edit list** .

31.5 Adding an item to a dynamic list

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click a cell on the dynamic list and choose **Dynamic list editor**.
   If you want to edit a dynamic list that is not on the page, see Editing a dynamic list (method 2) on page 109.
3. Click **Create new item** .
4. Select a symbol.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Repeat from step 4 to add more items.
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a dynamic list on page 109
Adding multiple items to a dynamic list on page 110
Sorting items in a dynamic list on page 110
Deleting an item from a dynamic list on page 110
Adjusting the contents of a dynamic list on page 111

31.6 Adding a cell to a dynamic list

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click the cell and select **Add to dynamic list...**.
3. Select the dynamic list and click **OK**.

31.7 Adding multiple items to a dynamic list

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click a cell on the dynamic list and choose **Dynamic list editor**.
   If you want to edit a dynamic list that is not on the page, see Editing a dynamic list (method 2) on page 109.
3. Click **Create multiple items**.
4. Use the drop-down list to filter.
5. In the results list, click on the items you want to add.
   The selected items are displayed in a list in the top right.
6. Repeat from step 5 to add more items.

   TIP
   *Use the **Move item up** and **Move item down** buttons to specify the order. Use the **Delete item** button to delete an item from the list. Use the **Clear list** to clear the entire list.*

7. Click **OK**.

   NOTE
   *Use the **Move item up** and **Move item down** buttons to specify the order or click **Sort alphabetically** to sort the list alphabetically.*

8. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a dynamic list on page 109
Adding an item to a dynamic list on page 109
Sorting items in a dynamic list on page 110
Deleting an item from a dynamic list on page 110
Adjusting the contents of a dynamic list on page 111

31.8 Sorting items in a dynamic list

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click a cell on the dynamic list and choose **Dynamic list editor**.
   If you want to edit a dynamic list that is not on the page, see Editing a dynamic list (method 2) on page 109.
3. Click **Sort alphabetically**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a dynamic list on page 109
Adding an item to a dynamic list on page 109
Adding multiple items to a dynamic list on page 110
Deleting an item from a dynamic list on page 110

31.9 Deleting an item from a dynamic list

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Right-click a cell on the dynamic list and choose **Dynamic list editor**.
   If you want to edit a dynamic list that is not on the page, see Editing a dynamic list (method 2) on page 109.
3. Select one or more items.
4. Click **Delete item**.

5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a dynamic list on page 109
Adding an item to a dynamic list on page 109
Adding multiple items to a dynamic list on page 110
Sorting items in a dynamic list on page 110

31.10 Adjusting the contents of a dynamic list

You can adjust the contents of a dynamic list by enabling or disabling certain items in the dynamic list. This allows you to make the dynamic list more limited or simpler, more extensive or more difficult.

1. Choose **Go to editor...** > **Edit mode** (or press **F2**).
2. Right-click a cell on the dynamic list and choose **Dynamic list editor**.
3. Enable or disable the items in the dynamic list.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a dynamic list on page 109
Adding an item to a dynamic list on page 109
Adding multiple items to a dynamic list on page 110

31.11 Adding a dynamic lists cell

You can use the dynamic lists cell to display an item from a dynamic list.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Dynamic lists** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Select the list from the **Select list:** drop-down list.
5. In the next drop-down list, choose the required order.

Order	Explanation
Normal order	The items in the dynamic list are displayed in the order they were entered in the dynamic list.
Random order	The items in the dynamic list are displayed in a random order, but an item may be displayed again when the next set is displayed.
Shuffled order	The items in the dynamic list are displayed in a random order, but an item will only be displayed again after all items from the dynamic list have been displayed.

31.12 Adding an action for dynamic lists

You can control the dynamic lists with the **Dynamic lists** action.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Dynamic lists** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Next (series)	To display the next set of items from the dynamic list.
Next (jump 1)	To display the next item from the dynamic list.
Previous (series)	To display the previous set of items from the dynamic list.
Previous (jump 1)	To display the previous item from the dynamic list.
Go to beginning	To go to the beginning of the dynamic list.
Start Autoscroll	To start autoscroll and automatically show the next set of items from the dynamic list.

Action	Explanation
Start Autoscroll (jump 1)	To play autoscroll. The program automatically scrolls through all the items on dynamic list, one by one.
Stop Autoscroll	To stop autoscroll.
Add message box to list	Add the contents of the message box cell to a dynamic list. To add symbols from the message box cell, the **Put symbols when storing Message in cell** option must be enabled. See Configuring the message options on page 64
Change list	To replace the contents of a dynamic list with the contents of another dynamic list.
Reset all lists	To restore the content of the dynamic lists to the initial situation.
Remove from dynamic list	To remove an item from the dynamic list. First select the cell that contains this action, and then select the cell that contains the item you want to remove from the dynamic list.
Cancel remove from dynamic list	To undo the **Remove from dynamic list** action. For example, if you select the cell with the **Remove from dynamic list** action by mistake, with the **Cancel remove from dynamic list** action you can go back to select a cell in the dynamic list without the item disappearing.

32 Volume

32.1 Adding an action for volume

The **Volume** action allows you to adjust the volume to suit your preferences.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Volume** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Stop all sound	To stop speech/sound.
Volume 1, Volume 2, ... Volume 9	To set the volume at a certain level. Volume 1 is the lowest volume position and 9 the highest.
Volume +	To increase the volume.
Volume -	To decrease the volume.

5. Click **OK**.

33 Other actions

33.1 Setting a wait between 2 actions

An action has been added which does not allow any further actions until the sound has stopped. You can specify a customized period of time that you want to wait before the next action can be performed.

- Example 1: to display the cells consecutively, you can specify the wait settings in between actions.
- Example 2: Go to page 1 and wait 5 seconds and go to page 2.

You can also specify that no further actions can be performed until all speech and sound actions (NOT Music and Video) have been performed. For example, it allows you to perform an animated gif, play a sound, but not move to the next page until the sound has finished playing.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Wait** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Wait time:	Specify the time in milliseconds. By default the wait is 1,000 msec, that is 1 second.
Wait for sound to finish	All speech and sound actions are played until finished, after which the next action can be performed.

5. Click **OK**.

34 Windows Control

Windows Control allows you to control other applications from Mind Express.

34.1 Adding an action for Windows Control

You can use an action for **Windows Control** to start using a different application from Mind Express.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Windows Control** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Send key	Send keys or a key combination from Mind Express to the active application. These keys or key combinations are not said aloud.
Send message box	Send the message from Mind Express to the active application. For example: a user can first create a message using symbols and then send it to Word.
Pause	Adds a pause between two actions to give the other application sufficient time to respond. For example, launching an application may take some time.
Sticky key	The **Shift**, **Ctrl**, **Alt** and **Windows** keys can be used in combination with other keys. ▪ Click once to activate the button until another Windows key is pressed. ▪ Click twice to activate the key continuously. ▪ Click three times to disable the key.
Sending: on/off	To start or stop sending commands to the active application. The **Start sending (other computer)** action allows you to start sending commands to start another device. Enter the IP address of the other device.
Active window	To move the active window, resize, link, fill or select the next window. When the **Select next window** action appears, you can enter (part of) the name of the program or window you want to select. For example: Word. Opens the next window that has Word in the title bar.
Mind Express window	To move the Mind Express window relatively or in percentages, or to resize it. You can save the position of the Mind Express window or revert to the saved position of the Mind Express window.
Mouse control	To move the mouse by scanning, clicking, double-clicking, right-clicking or dragging.
Exit	To exit Mind Express or **Windows**.
Always on top	To show Mind Express on top or to hide.

5. Click **OK**.

34.2 Activate Windows Control

To use Windows Control, Windows Control must be activated first. You can activate Windows Control by enabling sending through an action in a cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Windows Control** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Choose **Sending: on/off** from the first drop-down list.
5. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Sending: on** to activate Windows Control usage.
   - **Sending: on/off** to activate/deactivate Windows Control usage.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Leave the edit mode (**F2**).
8. Click on the cell with the added **Sending: on/off** or **Sending: on** action to activate Windows Control usage.

34.3 Changing the active window

You can move, resize, link or extend the active window, or you can make a particular window active.

You need to activate Windows Control in order to use the **Active window** action. See Activate Windows Control on page 113.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Windows Control** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Select the **Active window** option from the first drop-down menu.
5. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Move	To move the set number of pixels of the active window to **Up**, **Left**, **Down**, **Right**.
Move (%)	To move the set percentage of the active window to **Up**, **Left**, **Down**, **Right**.
Size	To extend the set number of pixels of the active window to **Top**, **Bottom**, **Left**, **Right**. You can also adjust the size of the active window with the **Maximize**, **Minimize** actions. The **Restore** action reduces the window to its previous size.
Dock	In order to link the active window on the screen to the **Top**, **Bottom**, **Left**, **Right**. The **Smart positioning** action positions the active window in the best possible way on the remaining space on the screen.
Tile	In order to extend the active window on the screen to the **Top**, **Bottom**, **Left**, **Right**. The other windows are justified on the screen. The **Smart positioning** action maximizes all the windows and the active window is brought to the top.
Select next window	This action enables you to enter (part of) the name in the title bar of the window you want to activate. For example, if you enter "Word", the window that has Word in the title bar is activated.

6. Click **OK**.

34.4 Changing the Mind Express window

To move, resize, link or extend the Mind Express window, or to select the next window.

You need to activate Windows Control in order to use the **Mind Express window** action. See Activate Windows Control on page 113.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Windows Control** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Select the **Mind Express window** option from the first drop-down menu.
5. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Move	To move the set number of pixels of the Mind Express window to **Up**, **Left**, **Down**, **Right**.
Move (%)	To move the set percentage of the Mind Express window to **Up**, **Left**, **Down**, **Right**.
Size	To extend the set number of pixels of the Mind Express window to **Top**, **Bottom**, **Left**, **Right**. You can also adjust the size of the Mind Express

Option	Explanation
	window with the **Fixed size**, **Maximize**, **Minimize** actions. The **Restore** action reduces the Mind Express window to its previous size.
Save position	To save the position of the Mind Express window.
Load position	To revert the position of the Mind Express window to the last saved position.

6. Click **OK**.

34.5 Activate the Mind Express window

For certain actions with Windows Control, the Mind Express window may no longer be active. The Mind Express window is no longer activated by clicking the title bar.

On the taskbar, click on the Mind Express taskbar button .
The Mind Express window is activated.

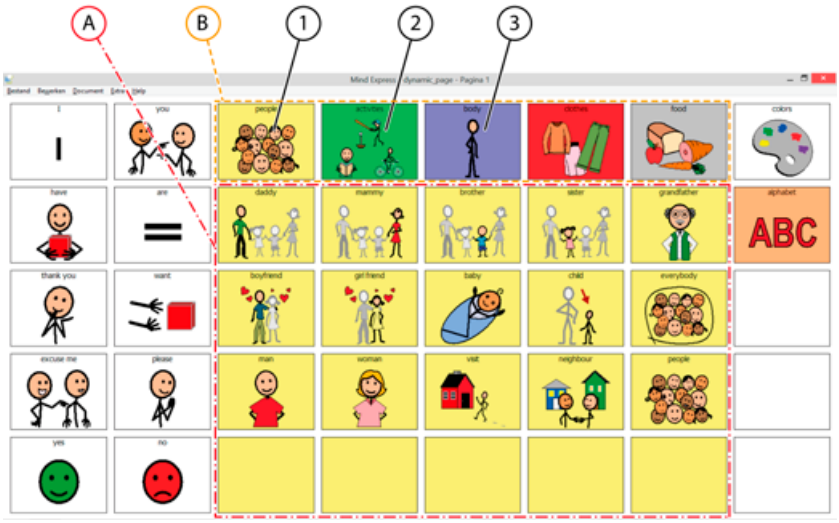
35 Dynamic pages

35.1 Dynamic pages

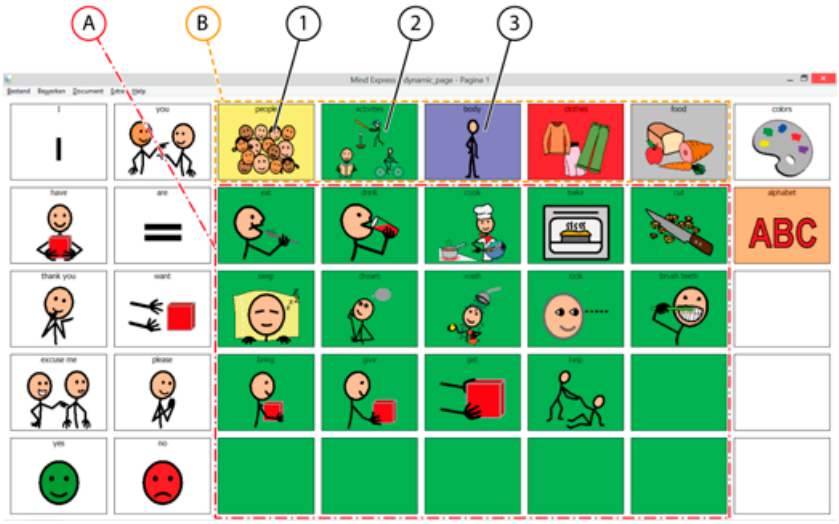
Dynamic pages make it possible to load a page in the cell of another page. So you may have a static and a dynamic area on the same page.

NOTE
Pages can not be retrieved onto pages that were created in freestyle.

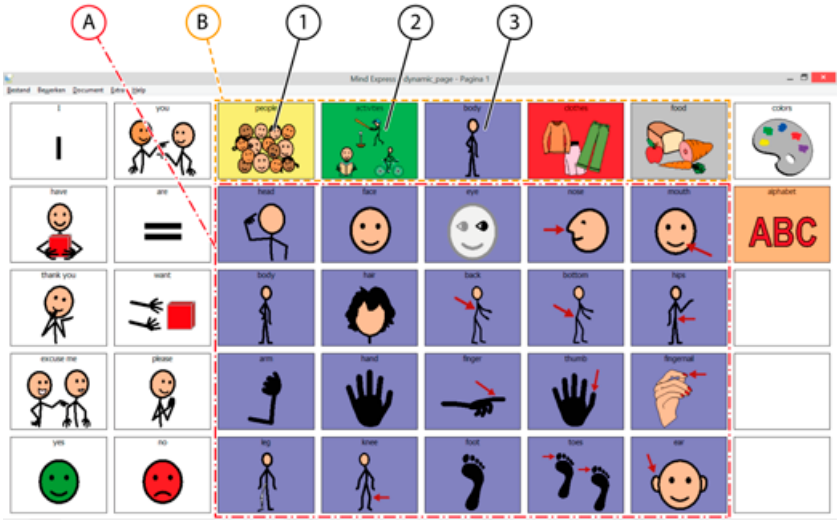
The example below shows how to use dynamic pages. You remain on page 1 and yet there is still a dynamic area (A) on the communication grid. Other pages are continuously loaded in the dynamic area. The advantage of working with dynamic pages: if you need to make a change to a static cell, you only need to do so on page 1.



The page contains a dynamic area (A) where the pages are loaded. In this example, the dynamic page cell (A) consists of 4 rows and 5 columns. To ensure the loaded pages are fully displayed, it is recommended to make all the pages to be loaded the same size (or smaller). If the pages to be loaded contain more cells than the dynamic page cell (A), then not all cells are displayed. To load these pages into the dynamic area (A), you can use cells (B), as these contain the **Go to page** action. For example, if you click on (2) then another page is loaded into the dynamic area. See below.



And if you click on (3) for example, then another page is loaded into the dynamic area (A). See below.



35.2 Adding a dynamic page cell

You can use the dynamic page cell to load a page into the cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

   TIP
   You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Dynamic page** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. In the **Name:** field, enter the name of the dynamic page cell.

   NOTE
   *You can create multiple **Dynamic page** type of cells on a page. Entering the name is required.*

5. From the **Start page:** drop-down list, select which is the page that will be displayed first.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

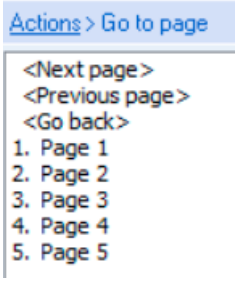
Loading a page into a dynamic cell on page 116

35.3 Loading a page into a dynamic cell

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Go to page** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
As required, click on or on in the toolbar to sort the pages either alphabetically or numerically.

4. Choose the page from the list box.



NOTE
To ensure the loaded pages are fully displayed, it is recommended to make all the pages you want to load the same size (or smaller). If the pages you want to load contain more cells than the dynamic page cell (A), then not all cells are displayed.

5. From the **In:** drop-down list, select the name of the dynamic cell you want the page to be loaded into.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a dynamic page cell on page 116

36 Mobi

36.1 Adding an action for Mobi

Users of the Mobi can add actions to a cell on a communication grid, in order to configure certain items (volume, brightness, audio, ...) in the Mobi.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Mobi** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
*If **Mobi** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See Activating/deactivating an add-on on page 157.*

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
   - **Microphone: on**
   - **Microphone: off**
   - **Phone: on**
   - **Phone: off**
   - **Headphones: volume +**
   - **HeadphoneS: volume -**
   - **Audio to speakers**
   - **Audio to speakers/headphones**
   - **Brightness +**
   - **Brightness -**
   - **GSM to speakers**
   - **GSM to headphones**
   - **GSM to speakers/headphones**
5. Click **OK**.

37 Mobi 2

37.1 Adding an action for Mobi 2

Users of the Mobi 2 can add actions to a cell on a communication grid, in order to configure certain items (headphone, speakers, volume, ...) in the Mobi 2.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Mobi 2** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
*If **Mobi 2** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See Activating/deactivating an add-on on page 157.*

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

- **Headphones: on**
- **Headphones: off**
- **Phone: on**
- **Phone: off**
- **Speaker: on**
- **Speaker: off**
- **Speaker: on/off**
- **Microphone: on**
- **Microphone: off**
- **Amplifier volume 1**
- **Amplifier volume 2**
- **Amplifier volume 3**
- **Amplifier volume 4**

5. Click **OK**.

38 Tellus 4

38.1 Adding an action for Tellus 4

Users of the Tellus 4 can add actions to a cell on a communication grid, in order to configure certain items (volume, audio, ...) in the Tellus 4.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Tellus 4** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
*If **Tellus 4** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157.*

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
   - **Headphones: on**
   - **Headphones: off**
   - **Phone: on**
   - **Phone: off**
   - **Speaker: on**
   - **Headphones: on/off**
   - **Audio to speakers/headphone**
   - **Speaker: on**
   - **Speaker: off**
5. Click **OK**.

39 Tellus 5

39.1 Adding an action for Tellus 5

Users of the Tellus 5 can add actions to a cell on a communication grid, in order to configure certain items (volume, audio, ...) in the Tellus 5.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Tellus 5** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
*If **Tellus 5** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157.*

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
   - **Headphones: on**
   - **Headphones: off**
   - **Speaker: on**
   - **Speaker: off**
   - **Microphone: on**
   - **Microphone: off**
   - **Brightness (25%)**
   - **Brightness (50%)**
   - **Brightness (75%)**
   - **Brightness (100%)**
5. Click **OK**.

40 Zingui 2

40.1 Adding an action for Zingui 2

Users of the Zingui 2 can add actions to a cell on a communication grid, in order to configure certain items (volume, audio, ...) in the Zingui 2.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Zingui 2** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

   NOTE
   *If **Zingui 2** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157*.

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
   - **Increase brightness**
   - **Reduce brightness**
   - **Standby mode**
   - **Shut down**
   - **Microphone: on**
   - **Microphone: off**
   - **Microphone: on/off**
   - **Speaker: on**
   - **Speaker: off**
   - **Speaker: on/off**
   - **Headphones: on**
   - **Headphones: off**
   - **Headphones: on/off**
5. Click **OK**.

40.2 Exporting the current document to Zingui or Smart 3

The file export function can be used to transfer a Mind Express document from Zingui or Smart3 to the computer.

1. Open the document you wish to export.
2. Choose **File** > **Export** > **To Zingui/Smart 3** > **Current document...**.

   NOTE
   *If **To Zingui/Smart 3** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157*.

3. From the **Export:** option group, select or deselect the required check boxes:

Option	Explanation
Images	If you select this option, all linked pictures are exported together with the document.
Sounds	If you select this option, all linked media library sounds are exported together with the document.
Linked documents	If you select this option, all linked documents are exported together with the document. So also the linked documents in the linked documents.
Music	If you select this option, all linked music files (such as mp3 files) are exported together with the document. The size of the exported file can become very substantial if a large number of music files are exported together with the file.

   NOTE
   *If you have the same document on the computer as on your device, and you have only made changes to the document (so not to the pictures, sounds, music or video), then you can deselect all the options in the **Export:** options group before exporting the file. This will reduce the size of the file and you will be able to export and import it much faster.*

4. Click **OK**.
   In the top of the **Export** dialog you will see an overview of the exported files. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green. In the bottom you will see an overview of the symbols used in the export.

   NOTE
   If symbol sets are used in the exported file, which are not available on the device, then the cells with these symbols are not filled.

5. Click **OK**.

See also

Importing a file from Zingui or Smart on page 120

40.3 Importing a file from Zingui or Smart

The file import function can be used to transfer a Mind Express document from Zingui or Smart to the computer.

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **From Zingui/Smart 3...**.

   NOTE
   *If **From Zingui/Smart 3...** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See Activating/deactivating an add-on on page 157.*

2. Select the files you want to import.
3. Click **Import**.
4. From the **Import** option group, select or deselect the required check boxes:

Option	Explanation
Images	If you select this option, all linked pictures are imported together with the document.
Sounds	If you select this option, all linked media library sounds are imported together with the document.
Linked documents	If you select this option, all linked documents are imported together with the document. So also the linked documents in the linked documents.
Music	If you select this option, all linked music files (such as mp3 files) are imported together with the document. The size of the imported file can become very substantial if a large number of music files are imported together with the file.

   NOTE
   *If you have the same document on the computer as on your device, and you have only made changes to the document (so not to the pictures, sounds, music or video), then you can deselect all the options in the **Import** options group before importing the file. This will reduce the size of the file and you will be able to import it much faster.*

5. Click **OK**.
   In the top of the **Import** dialog you will see an overview of the imported files. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green. In the bottom you will see an overview of the symbols used in the import.

   NOTE
   If symbol sets are used in the imported file, which are not available on the computer, then the cells with these symbols are not filled.

6. Click **OK**.

See also

Exporting the current document to Zingui or Smart 3 on page 119

41 Smart 3

41.1 Adding an action for Smart 3

Users of the Smart 3 can add actions to a cell on a communication grid, in order to configure certain items (volume, audio, ...) in the Smart 3.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Smart3** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

   NOTE
   *If **Smart3** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See Activating/deactivating an add-on on page 157.*

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
   - **Increase brightness**
   - **Reduce brightness**
   - **Standby mode**
   - **Shut down**
   - **Microphone on**
   - **Microphone off**
   - **Microphone on/off**
5. Click **OK**.

41.2 Exporting the current document to Zingui or Smart 3

The file export function can be used to transfer a Mind Express document from Zingui or Smart3 to the computer.

1. Open the document you wish to export.
2. Choose **File** > **Export** > **To Zingui/Smart 3** > **Current document...**.

   NOTE
   *If **To Zingui/Smart 3** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157.*

3. From the **Export:** option group, select or deselect the required check boxes:

Option	Explanation
Images	If you select this option, all linked pictures are exported together with the document.
Sounds	If you select this option, all linked media library sounds are exported together with the document.
Linked documents	If you select this option, all linked documents are exported together with the document. So also the linked documents in the linked documents.
Music	If you select this option, all linked music files (such as mp3 files) are exported together with the document. The size of the exported file can become very substantial if a large number of music files are exported together with the file.

   NOTE
   *If you have the same document on the computer as on your device, and you have only made changes to the document (so not to the pictures, sounds, music or video), then you can deselect all the options in the **Export:** options group before exporting the file. This will reduce the size of the file and you will be able to export and import it much faster.*

4. Click **OK**.
   In the top of the **Export** dialog you will see an overview of the exported files. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green. In the bottom you will see an overview of the symbols used in the export.

   NOTE
   If symbol sets are used in the exported file, which are not available on the device, then the cells with these symbols are not filled.

5. Click **OK**.

41.3 Importing a file from Zingui or Smart

The file import function can be used to transfer a Mind Express document from Zingui or Smart to the computer.

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **From Zingui/Smart 3...**.

   NOTE
   *If **From Zingui/Smart 3...** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157.*

2. Select the files you want to import.
3. Click **Import**.
4. From the **Import** option group, select or deselect the required check boxes:

Option	Explanation
Images	If you select this option, all linked pictures are imported together with the document.
Sounds	If you select this option, all linked media library sounds are imported together with the document.
Linked documents	If you select this option, all linked documents are imported together with the document. So also the linked documents in the linked documents.
Music	If you select this option, all linked music files (such as mp3 files) are imported together with the document. The size of the imported file can become very substantial if a large number of music files are imported together with the file.

   NOTE
   *If you have the same document on the computer as on your device, and you have only made changes to the document (so not to the pictures, sounds, music or video), then you can deselect all the options in the **Import** options group before importing the file. This will reduce the size of the file and you will be able to import it much faster.*

5. Click **OK**.

In the top of the **Import** dialog you will see an overview of the imported files. The images will appear in blue, the sound files in violet and all other files that are linked to the document will appear in green. In the bottom you will see an overview of the symbols used in the import.

NOTE
If symbol sets are used in the imported file, which are not available on the computer, then the cells with these symbols are not filled.

6. Click **OK**.

41.4 Adding a Smart 3 camera cell

You can use the Smart 3 Camera cell to display the photos you have taken.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Camera Smart/Zingui** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**.

41.5 Adding a Smart 3 camera action

For users of the Smart 3 a camera action can be added. This action will allow you to start the camera application, to take photos, view the previous and the next photos and delete a photo.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Camera Smart/Zingui** from the **Actions** drop-down list.

NOTE
*If **Camera Smart/Zingui** cannot be found in the list of actions, check that the add-on has been enabled. See* Activating/deactivating an add-on *on page 157*.

4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
   - **Pictures for media library**, this opens the camera application so you can take photos.
   - **Next picture**, displays the next photo in the Smart 3 Camera cell.
   - **Previous picture**, displays the previous photo in the Smart 3 Camera cell.
   - **Delete picture**, deletes the photo that is displayed in the Smart 3 Camera cell.
5. Click **OK**.

42 Prediction

42.1 Creating a prediction cell

You can use the prediction cell to allow words or sentences to be predicted in the cell. This greatly increases the speed of communication for the user.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

TIP
You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Prediction** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Select the **Sentence prediction** option if you want the prediction cell to predict sentences instead of words.
5. Click **OK**.

43 Other cell types

43.1 Restoring a cell to a default cell

If you no longer want a cell to have a specific function, you can restore it to be a default cell. You can add a symbol, label or any action to a default cell.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).

TIP
You can increase or decrease the size of a cell. To do this, (in Edit mode) click on the cell and then click on one of the black squares that appear. Press and hold the mouse button and drag the cell until it has the desired size.

2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Default** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**.

43.2 Creating a status cell

A status cell enables you to visualize the status of a specific function.

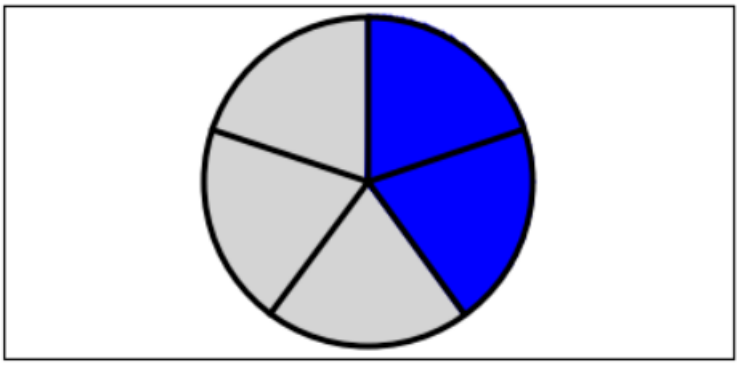
For example: if the log function is enabled, then the style of the status cell changes to style 5 (green background), and as soon as the log function is disabled, the status cell style changes to style 2 (red background).

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **State** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. From the next drop-down list, select one of the following functions:
   - **Eddy**
   - **Log**
   - **Eye tracking**
   - **Rotate screen**
   - **Phone**
   - **Windows Control**
5. Choose the function from the **Choose type:** drop-down list.
   You will find all the functions that have multiple statuses in the drop-down list.
6. Click **Define states**.
7. Select the first status.
8. Select **Change to style:** and choose a style from the drop-down list.
   To create a new style, click ... and create a new style. See Creating a new style on page 51.
9. Select the next status.
10. Select **Change to style:** and choose a style from the drop-down list.
    To create a new style, click ... and create a new style. See Creating a new style on page 51.
11. If there are still any further statuses, repeat from step 9.
12. Click **OK**.
13. Click **OK**.

43.3 Creating a diagram cell

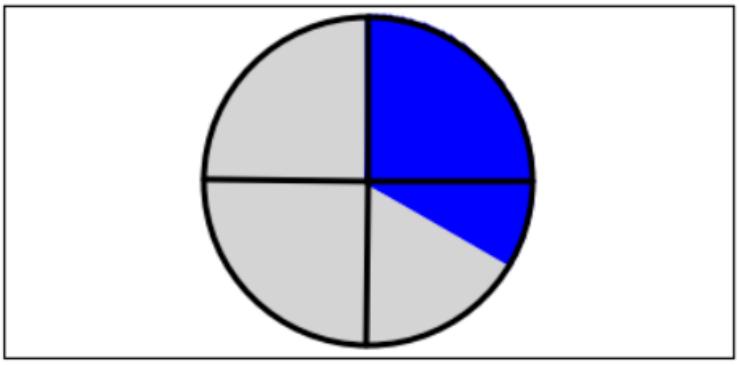
A diagram cell displays 2 other divided cells. Make sure you have already added 2 cells with the ID and a label with the numeral value (or hour).

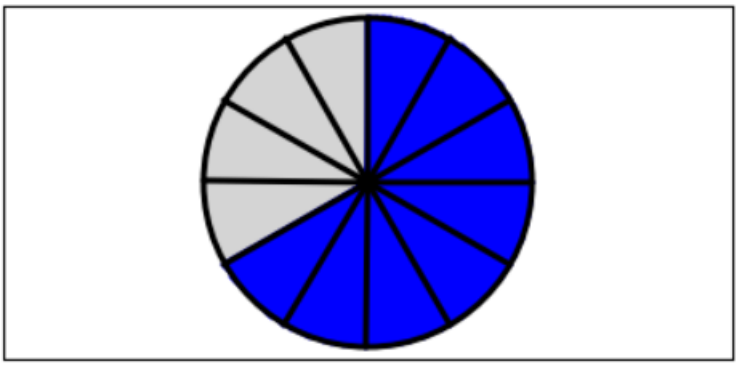
For example: a cell with ID A has label 2 and a cell with ID B has label 5. The diagram cell based on these cells shows the pie chart 2/5.



The diagram cell can also be used to represent hours.

For example: an activity that lasts less than an hour (for example 20 minutes) is displayed in a diagram divided into 4 quarter hours. An activity that lasts more than an hour (for example 8 hours) is displayed in a diagram divided into 12 hours.





1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. Choose **Chart** from the **Type:** drop-down list.
4. Complete the following fields:
   - **Cell ID of dividend**, the ID of the cell of which the value in the label becomes the counter.
   - **Cell ID of divisor**, the ID of the cell of which the value in the label becomes the denominator.
5. Click **OK**.

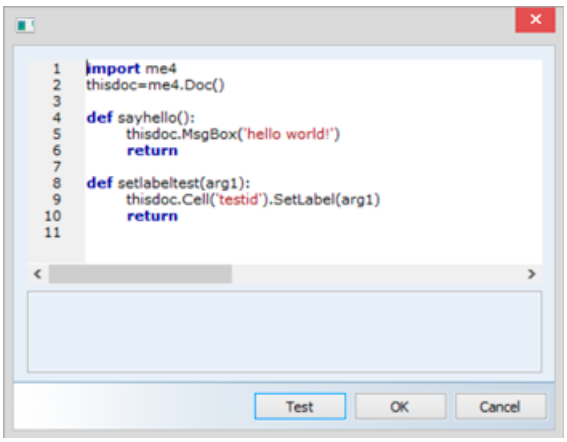
44 Scripts

44.1 Creating a script

Advanced users are able to program actions in Mind Express. Each document can contain one script for programming various commands in Python (www.python.org). The commands in the script can be triggered by a particular event (for example opening a page) or they can be called using the **Script** action assigned to a cell.

TIP
For more information, please contact Jabbla.

1. Choose **Document** > **Script...**.
2. Write the script.



3. Click **Test** to test the script.
   An explanation on errors that may occur appears in the bottom of the dialog. Resolve the errors.

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding an action script on page 125

44.2 Adding an action script

The script may contain a large number of commands. An action allows you to perform one of the commands.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Script** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. Enter the name of the command from the script you want to perform.
   Example: sayhello()

   In an existing action, you can use the button to go to the correct position in the script. A search function is available for searching the script.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a script on page 124

45 Eye control

45.1 Creating an eye control cell

You can create an eye control cell to pause eye control or to view how eye control is operating.

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Advanced** in the **Edit** dialog.
3. From the **Type:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Type	Explanation
Eye tracking: monitor	This cell can be used to display the eyes. This is so you can see whether the eyes are properly observed by eye control. You can also check the position of the eyes. A full circle means that the eye is properly observed, a hollow circle means that the eye is not observed by eye control.
Eye tracking: pause field	If the user selects this field, eye control is paused until the user selects this cell again. The cell is displayed in red if eye control is paused.

4. Click **OK**.

45.2 Adding an action for eye control

1. Edit the cell (**F5**).
2. Click **Add item Ctrl+click=Copy item** in the **Actions** options group.
3. Choose **Eye tracking** from the **Actions** drop-down list.
4. From the drop-down list, select one of the following actions:

Action	Explanation
Calibrate	To perform eye control calibration in accordance with the current settings.
Blink on	To activate eye control selection by blinking.
Dwell on	To activate eye control selection by dwelling.
Switch on	To activate eye control selection by using the switch.
Blink off	To deactivate eye control selection by blinking.
Dwell off	To deactivate eye control selection by dwelling.
Switch off	To deactivate eye control selection by using the switch.
Blink on/off	To activate/deactivate eye control selection by blinking.
Dwell on/off	To activate/deactivate eye control selection by dwelling.
Switch on/off	To activate/deactivate eye control selection by using the switch.

Action	Explanation
Stop eye tracking	Eye control is exited. Even when the eye control program is running in the background of Mind Express, it is closed. The Mouse mode is activated.
Go to eye tracking	The eye control program is launched. Some types of eye control programs are active without Mind Express running. The Eye Control mode is activated.

5. Click **OK**.

D Mind Express settings

1 User settings

1.1 User settings

You can configure Mind Express for more than one user. For each user you can specify different preferences, dictionary files, message box settings etc.

NOTE
When you open a document, the system will first search for document-specific selection preferences. If no selection preferences are specified in the document, the user settings will be used for selection.

1.2 Adding a new user

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Click .
3. If you wish to add a picture or an image, click **Select image**, select a picture or photo and click **OK**.
4. Enter the name of the user in the **Name:** field.
5. Optionally a password can be entered in the **Password (optional):** field to ensure the safe use of Mind Express for this user.
6. If the user always needs to start up with the same document, select the **Start document:** option, click on , select the file and click **Open**.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Do one of the following:

To ...	Action
Add another user.	Repeat from step 2.
Continue working	Click **Cancel**.
Log in with the added user	Click **Log in**.

See also

Changing the user image on page 128
Editing the user name on page 129
Changing the user password on page 129
Editing the user start document on page 129
Deleting a user on page 130

1.3 Changing the user image

The user image can be changed and can be deleted.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the user.
3. As required, enter the password in the **Password:** field.

NOTE
If a user forgets the password, please contact your distributor.

4. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click on the user.
   - Select the user and click on .
5. Click **Select image**.
6. Select the image.

TIP
To use the default picture, select ***<None>*** *from the top drop-down list.*

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new user on page 128
Editing the user name on page 129
Changing the user password on page 129
Editing the user start document on page 129
Deleting a user on page 130

1.4 Editing the user name

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the user with the name you want to change.
3. As required, enter the password in the **Password:** field.

   NOTE
   If a user forgets the password, please contact your distributor.

4. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click on the user.
   - Select the user and click on .
5. In the **Name:** field, edit the name of the user.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new user on page 128
Changing the user image on page 128
Changing the user password on page 129
Editing the user start document on page 129
Deleting a user on page 130

1.5 Changing the user password

The user password can be changed and can be deleted.

NOTE
If a user forgets the password, please contact your distributor.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the user with the password you want to change.
3. Enter the current password in the **Password:** field.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click on the user.
   - Select the user and click on .
5. Change the password in the **Password (optional):** field.

   TIP
   To delete the password, clear the password.

6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new user on page 128
Changing the user image on page 128
Editing the user name on page 129
Editing the user start document on page 129
Deleting a user on page 130

1.6 Editing the user start document

There is the option to specify the document the user always starts with when launching Mind Express. You can create a general communication grid that always starts up when the user launches the program. The general communication grid can contain a further sub division to other communication grids.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the user.
3. As required, enter the password in the **Password:** field.

   NOTE
   If a user forgets the password, please contact your distributor.

4. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click on the user.
   - Select the user and click on .
5. Select the **Start document:** option.

6. Click ..., select the file and click **Open**.
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new user on page 128
Changing the user image on page 128
Editing the user name on page 129
Changing the user password on page 129
Deleting a user on page 130

1.7 Deleting a user

A user can be deleted.

NOTE
To delete the current user, you first need to log in as a different user.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the user.
3. As required, enter the password in the **Password:** field.

NOTE
If a user forgets the password, please contact your distributor.

4. Select the user and click on ✖.
5. Confirm in the **Edit user** dialog.

See also

Adding a new user on page 128
Changing the user image on page 128
Editing the user name on page 129
Changing the user password on page 129
Editing the user start document on page 129

1.8 Displaying the login window on startup

The **Select user** dialog can be displayed with every Mind Express startup. If you generally work with the same user, we would recommend not to display this dialog. To log in with a different user, see Logging in with a different user on page 130.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the **Show login window at start-up** option.

1.9 Logging in with a different user

1. Choose **Tools** > **Select user...**.
2. Select the user.
3. As required, enter the password in the **Password:** field.
4. Click **Log in**.

1.10 Exporting user data

The user data contains information about the user gathered from different add-ons. The Mind Express settings are also exported.

For example: if you want to transfer your contacts, export the address book; if you want to transfer your appointments and alarms, export the agenda.

1. Choose **File** > **Backup** > **Backup user data...**.
2. Deselect the data you do not want to export.

Add-ons	Explanation
Address book	All contacts and their phone numbers and e-mail address.
Agenda	The activities and alarms from the agenda
E-mail	The received and sent e-mails.
GEWA	The names of the commands. NOT the actual infrared codes!

Add-ons	Explanation
User Settings	The e-mail settings, the telephone settings, the Mind Express settings (can be found in **Tools** > **Options...**), speech and the selection settings.
Internet	The favorites, the start page, the white list and the black list.
Log	The log file.
Phone	The received and sent messages.
Speech dictionary	All speech dictionaries.
Prediction	All prediction lists, both word prediction and sentence prediction lists.

3. Click **OK**.
4. Choose the location to save the data and enter the name of the file in the **Filename** field.
5. Click **Save**.
   Mind Express must be rebooted.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Reboot Mind Express.

See also

Importing user data on page 131

1.11 Importing user data

The file with the user data that is imported may contain information about the user gathered from various add-ons, or even Mind Express settings, the speech dictionary, the word and sentence prediction. The information in the file depends on the user data that was exported.

1. Choose **File** > **Backup** > **Restore user data...**.
2. Select the file with the user data you want to import.
3. Click **Open**.
4. Deselect the data you do not want to import.
5. Click **OK**.
   Mind Express must be rebooted.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Reboot Mind Express.

See also

Exporting user data on page 130

2 Setting the selection method

2.1 Selection settings

There are a large number of settings for customizing the selection method to meet the user's needs. A selection can be outlined in a specific color, it can be enlarged, a selection can be made by pressing or releasing, a dwell selection can be set up, it is even possible to play a sound and display audible feedback for the selection.

When using the joystick, the selection indicator can continue to move in steps in the direction indicated by the joystick

Mind Express can also be used with a 1 or 2 switch scanning system. Mind Express offers a number of scanning methods, preferences and options that allow you to configure your scanning to best suit the needs and skills of the user.

NOTE
When you open a document, the system will first search for document-specific selection preferences. If no selection preferences are specified in the document, the user settings will be used for selection.

See also

Mouse selection on page 131
Joystick selection on page 137
Scanning selection on page 141

2.2 Mouse selection

2.2.1 Mouse selection

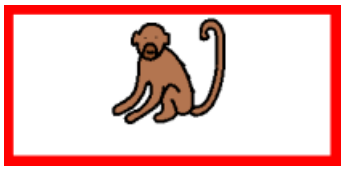
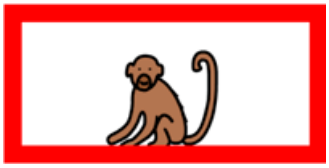
The mouse can be used to click on the cells in the communication grid. A single click can produce a sound, a word or sentence, or perform an action.

NOTE
The settings that are relevant for the mouse also apply to the trackball and the touch screen.

2.2.2 The selection indicator settings on mouse selection

You can configure how to visually display the selected cell using the selection indicator.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. From the **Selection indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication that the cell has been selected.
Border	A thin border appears around the cell. 
Border (large)	A wide border appears around the cell. 
Border (large x2)	An extra wide border appears around the cell. 
Inverse	The selected cell is inverted. 
Circle (bottom)	In the bottom-right of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (top)	In the top-left of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (centre)	In the center of the selected cell, a full circle appears.

Field	Explanation
	

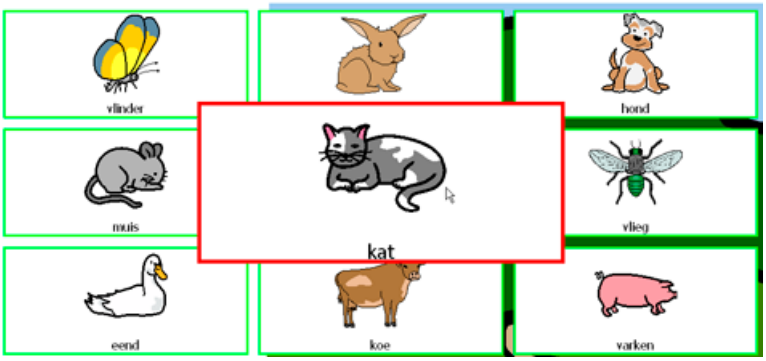
3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Selection indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Displaying selected cell enlarged on mouse selection on page 133
Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on mouse selection on page 133
Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on mouse selection on page 133

2.2.3 Displaying selected cell enlarged on mouse selection

When you select a cell, you can enlarge the cell. You can specify how many times to enlarge the cell.



1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the **Enlarge cell** option.
3. Move the slider to set the enlargement.
   The enlargement settings can be between 1.1 and 10 times.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on mouse selection on page 132
Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on mouse selection on page 133
Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on mouse selection on page 133

2.2.4 Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on mouse selection

The selection indicator can be shown, specified cells can be enlarged, the mouse pointer can be made permanently visible.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the **Show indicator during mouse movement** option.

   NOTE
   *If you have also selected the **Enlarge cell** option, the selection indicator is shown when the mouse moves over a cell, and the cell is magnified.*

3. As required, select the **Also show mouse cursor** option to continue to show the mouse during a mouse movement.

   NOTE
   In devices such as the Smart you will only be able to use this option if you connect an external mouse to the device.

See also

The selection indicator settings on mouse selection on page 132
Displaying selected cell enlarged on mouse selection on page 133
Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on mouse selection on page 133

2.2.5 Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on mouse selection

There is the option to define whether selection is to be performed at the moment of pressing or releasing. The select option to release allows the user to swipe over the screen and release when reaching the desired cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. From **Select:** select one of the following options:
   - **on press**
   - **on release**
3. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on mouse selection on page 132
Displaying selected cell enlarged on mouse selection on page 133
Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on mouse selection on page 133

2.2.6 Dwell selection settings on mouse selection

When using dwell selection, the cell with the mouse pointer is automatically selected after a specified dwell time.

For example: if your mouse pointer is on a cell for 2 seconds, then that cell is automatically selected.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the **Dwell selection** option.
3. As required, select the **Repeat dwell** option.
   The dwell selection is repeated each time the selected period passes. If a dwell selection time of 2 seconds has been configured, then the cell indicated by the pointer will be selected automatically every 2 seconds, until the pointer is moved to another cell. This can be useful when compiling words with a same letter sequence.
4. Click **OK**.

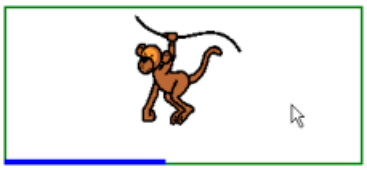
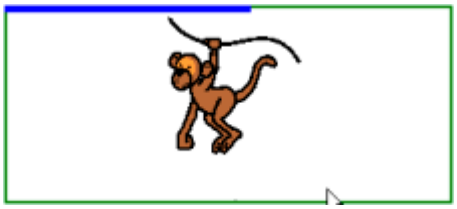
See also

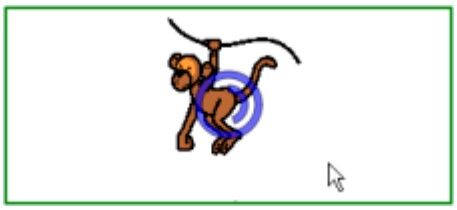
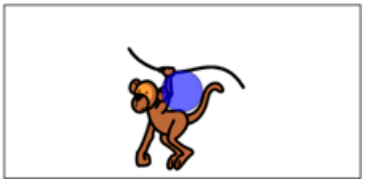
The dwell indicator on mouse selection settings on page 134
Dwell time settings on mouse selection on page 135
Start and stop dwelling settings on page 136
The external dwell jitter margin settings on page 136

2.2.7 The dwell indicator on mouse selection settings

You can configure how to visually display dwell time using the dwell indicator. You can choose whether to display dwell time progress using a bar or a clock. The color of the bar or clock can also be configured.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. From the **Dwell Indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication of dwell time
Bar on Bottom	A bar appears at the bottom. 
Bar at Top	A bar appears at the top. 
Full circle clock	A complete clock appears.

Field	Explanation
	
Hollow clock	A hollow clock appears. 
Circle (on selection)	A full circle appears when selected. 

3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Dwell Indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Dwell selection settings on mouse selection on page 134
Dwell time settings on mouse selection on page 135
Start and stop dwelling settings on page 136
The external dwell jitter margin settings on page 136

2.2.8 Dwell time settings on mouse selection

When using dwell selection, the indicated cell is automatically selected after the specified dwell time. The dwell time can be set between 0.1 and 15 seconds.

For example: if you point to the same cell for 2 seconds, then that cell is automatically selected after 2 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Dwell time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease dwell time, click on + to increase dwell time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease dwell time, drag it to the right to increase dwell time.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Dwell selection settings on mouse selection on page 134
The dwell indicator on mouse selection settings on page 134
Start and stop dwelling settings on page 136
The external dwell jitter margin settings on page 136

2.2.9 Setting the dwell memory time on mouse selection

Using dwell memory time, you can set the delay after which dwell time is saved in memory. This option can be set for users struggling to remain on a cell with the mouse pointer for the entire dwell time.

For example, the dwell time needed to continue with selection is set to 2 seconds and the dwell time memory is set to 1 second. The user places the mouse pointer on cell A for 1.5 seconds. This time (1.5 seconds) is greater than the set dwell memory time (1 second), so the amount of time (1.5 seconds) is stored in memory. Then the user places the mouse pointer on cell B for 0.5 seconds. This time (0.5 seconds) is less than the dwell memory time (1 second) and is

therefore not stored in memory. Then, the user puts the mouse back on cell A for more than 0.5 seconds. Cell A is selected. So, the user has placed the pointer on cell A for more than 2 seconds in total, of which 1.5 seconds was stored in memory in the first action.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Dwell memory time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the dwell memory time, click on + to increase the dwell memory time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the dwell memory time, drag it to the right to increase the dwell memory time.
4. Click **OK**.

2.2.10 The post selection time settings on mouse selection

To prevent the user from indicating the same cell several times, you can set a post selection time. For example: a post selection time of 2 seconds will ensure that after selecting a cell, for a period of 2 seconds, no other cell can be selected. The post selection time can be set between 0 and 15 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Post selection time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the post selection time, click on + to increase the post selection time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the post selection time, drag it to the right to increase the post selection time.
4. Click **OK**.

2.2.11 Start and stop dwelling settings

By default dwelling starts as soon as you indicate a cell and dwelling stops after the specified dwell time. After the dwell time has passed, the cell is selected. You can set the dwelling to stop on releasing the mouse. For example: with a dwell time of 2 seconds, the user must press and hold a cell for 2 seconds before the cell is selected.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the option in the **Start on press, stop on release** option group.

   NOTE
   *This option is only available if **Dwell selection** has been selected.*

3. Click **OK**.

See also

Dwell selection settings on mouse selection on page 134
The dwell indicator on mouse selection settings on page 134
Dwell time settings on mouse selection on page 135
The external dwell jitter margin settings on page 136

2.2.12 The external dwell jitter margin settings

If you want to use dwell outside of Mind Express, then you can specify the area within which to dwell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the **Dwell selection** option.
3. In the **External dwelling jitter margin:** field, enter the size (in pixels) of the dwell area. If the mouse pointer leaves this area, a new dwelling starts.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Dwell selection settings on mouse selection on page 134
The dwell indicator on mouse selection settings on page 134
Dwell time settings on mouse selection on page 135
Start and stop dwelling settings on page 136

2.2.13 Play sound when selecting on mouse selection

A default sound can be played on selection of a cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the **Sound on selection** option.
3. Click **OK**.

2.2.14 Setting the auditory feedback on mouse selection

If you select auditory feedback, the scan word in each cell, row or column is said aloud when your mouse pointer moves over the word. If a scan word has not been specified, the text of the cell is said aloud. If there is no text, the label of the cell is said aloud. You can opt to have the text of the cell spoken aloud instead of the label, if a scan word has not been specified.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Mouse selection...**.
2. Select the **Auditory feedback** option.
   The scan word is said aloud. If a scan word has not been specified, the text of the cell is said aloud. If there is no text, the label of the cell is said aloud.
3. As necessary, click the **Voice:** option to edit the speech. See The speech settings on page 157.

   NOTE
   You can opt to have auditory feedback spoken in another language, by a different voice, with a different voice volume and at a different speed.

4. As required, select the **Use label if no scanword is specified** option.
   The cell label will be said aloud instead of the text, if no scan word is available.
5. From the **Channel:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Left channel	If you select this option, you will hear the scanwords through the left speaker and all other speech messages through the right speaker.
Right channel	If you select this option, you will hear the scanwords through the right speaker and all other speech messages through the left speaker.
Both channels (stereo)	If you select this option, you will hear the scanwords and all other speech messages through both speakers.

6. Click **OK**.

2.3 Joystick selection

2.3.1 Joystick selection

The joystick can be used to navigate from one cell to another in the communication grid. A single press will produce a sound, word or phrase, or perform an action.

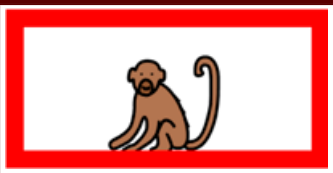
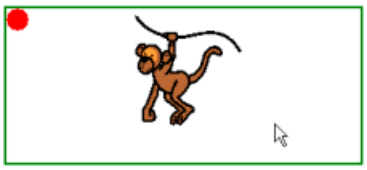
NOTE
Alternatively, you can use the arrow keys on the keyboard as a joystick. Use the Enter key or space bar as the selection key.

2.3.2 The selection indicator settings on joystick selection

You can configure how to visually display the selected cell using the selection indicator.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. From the **Selection indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication that the cell has been selected.
Border	A thin border appears around the cell. 
Border (large)	A wide border appears around the cell. 
Border (large x2)	An extra wide border appears around the cell.

Field	Explanation
	
Inverse	The selected cell is inverted. 
Circle (bottom)	In the bottom-right of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (top)	In the top-left of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (centre)	In the center of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 

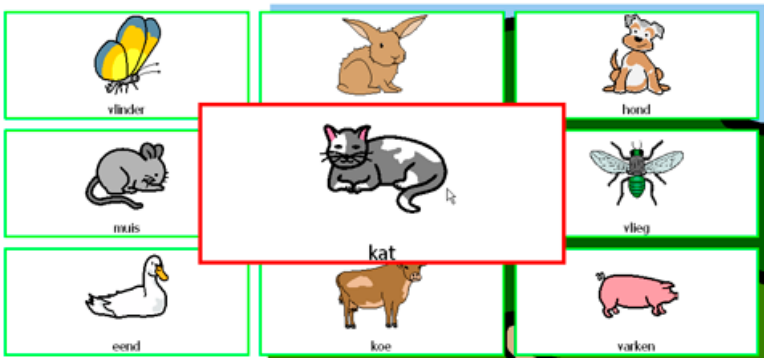
3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Selection indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Displaying selected cell enlarged on joystick selection on page 138
Enabling the selection indicator to auto wrap on page 139
Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on joystick selection on page 139

2.3.3 Displaying selected cell enlarged on joystick selection

When you select a cell, you can enlarge the cell. You can specify how many times to enlarge the cell.



1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. Select the **Enlarge cell** option.
3. Move the slider to set the enlargement.
   The enlargement settings can be between 1.1 and 10 times.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on joystick selection on page 137
Enabling the selection indicator to auto wrap on page 139
Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on joystick selection on page 139

2.3.4 Enabling the selection indicator to auto wrap

If the **Auto wrap** action has been activated, then, when the selection indicator reaches the end of a row, it will automatically jump to the first cell of that row. At the end of a column, the selection indicator will jump to the first cell of that column. Conversely, the selection indicator will jump to the last cell of a row or column as soon as the beginning of the row or column has been reached. If this action is not activated, then the selection indicator will remain on the first or last cell of a row or column.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. Select the **Auto wrap** option.
3. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on joystick selection on page 137
Displaying selected cell enlarged on joystick selection on page 138
Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on joystick selection on page 139

2.3.5 Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on joystick selection

There is the option to define whether selection is to be performed at the moment of pressing or releasing. The select option to release allows the user to hover over the cells and release when reaching the desired cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. From **Select:** select one of the following options:
   - **on press**
   - **on release**
3. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on joystick selection on page 137
Displaying selected cell enlarged on joystick selection on page 138
Enabling the selection indicator to auto wrap on page 139

2.3.6 Dwell selection on joystick selection settings

When using dwell selection, the indicated cell is automatically selected after a specified dwell time.

For example: if you point to the same cell for 2 seconds, then that cell is automatically selected after 2 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. Select the **Dwell selection** option.
3. As required, select the **Repeat dwell** option.
   The dwell selection is repeated each time the selected period passes. If a dwell selection time of 2 seconds has been configured, then the cell indicated by the pointer will be selected automatically every 2 seconds, until the pointer is moved to another cell. This can be useful when compiling words with a same letter sequence.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

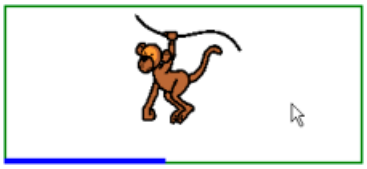
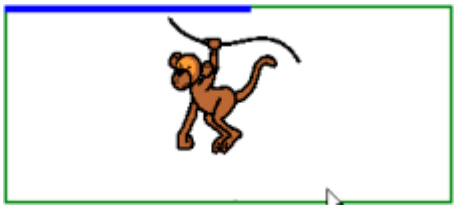
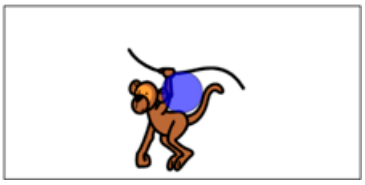
The dwell indicator on joystick selection settings on page 139
Dwell time settings on joystick selection on page 140

2.3.7 The dwell indicator on joystick selection settings

You can configure how to visually display dwell time using the dwell indicator. You can choose whether to display dwell time progress using a bar or a clock. The color of the bar or clock can also be configured.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.

2. From the **Dwell Indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication of dwell time
Bar on Bottom	A bar appears at the bottom. 
Bar at Top	A bar appears at the top. 
Full circle clock	A complete clock appears. 
Hollow clock	A hollow clock appears. 
Circle (on selection)	A full circle appears when selected. 

3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Dwell Indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Dwell selection on joystick selection settings on page 139
Dwell time settings on joystick selection on page 140

2.3.8 Dwell time settings on joystick selection

When using dwell selection, the indicated cell is automatically selected after the specified dwell time. The dwell time can be set between 0.1 and 15 seconds.

For example: if you point to the same cell for 2 seconds, then that cell is automatically selected after 2 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Dwell time**.
3. Do one of the following:

- Click on - to decrease dwell time, click on + to increase dwell time.
- Drag the slider to the left to decrease dwell time, drag it to the right to increase dwell time.

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Dwell selection on joystick selection settings on page 139
The dwell indicator on joystick selection settings on page 139

2.3.9 The post selection time settings on joystick selection

To prevent the user from indicating the same cell several times, you can set a post selection time. For example: a post selection time of 2 seconds will ensure that after selecting a cell, for a period of 2 seconds, no other cell can be selected. The post selection time can be set between 0 and 15 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Post selection time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the post selection time, click on + to increase the post selection time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the post selection time, drag it to the right to increase the post selection time.
4. Click **OK**.

2.3.10 Play sound when selecting on joystick selection

A default sound can be played on selection of a cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. Select the **Sound on selection** option.
3. Click **OK**.

2.3.11 Enabling the selection indicator to auto advance

If the **Step repeat** option has been activated, then the selection indicator will automatically continue to advance in the indicated direction of the joystick, for as long as the joystick indicates that direction.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Joystick selection...**.
2. Select the **Step repeat** option.
3. Click **OK**.

2.4 Scanning selection

2.4.1 Scanning selection

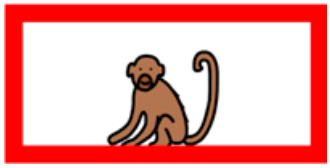
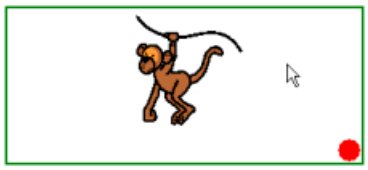
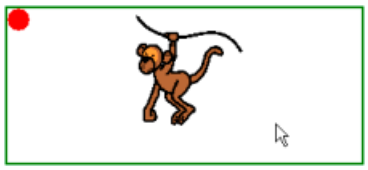
Mind Express can also be used with a 1 or 2 switch scanning system. Mind Express offers a number of scanning methods, preferences and options that allow you to configure your scanning to best suit the needs and skills of the user.

2.4.2 The scan indicator settings

You can configure how to visually display the scanned cell using the scan indicator.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. From the **Scanning indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication that the cell has been selected.
Border	A thin border appears around the cell. 
Border (large)	A wide border appears around the cell.

Field	Explanation
	
Border (large x2)	An extra wide border appears around the cell. 
Inverse	The selected cell is inverted. 
Circle (bottom)	In the bottom-right of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (top)	In the top-left of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (centre)	In the center of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 

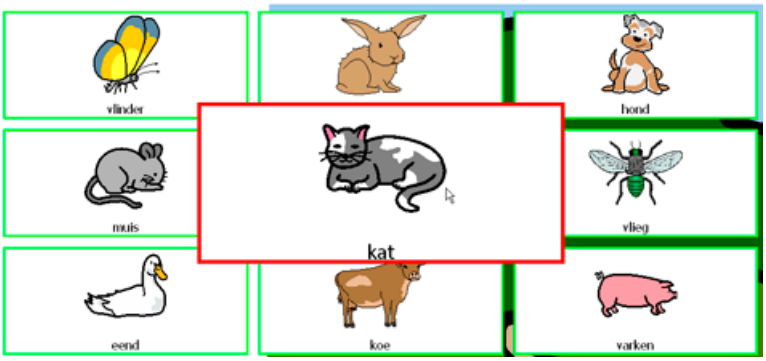
4. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Scanning indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Displaying selected cell enlarged on scanning selection on page 142
Settings for accept tap when pressing or releasing on scanning selection on page 143

2.4.3 Displaying selected cell enlarged on scanning selection

When you select a cell, you can enlarge the cell. You can specify how many times to enlarge the cell.



1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. Select the **Enlarge cell** option.
4. Move the slider to set the enlargement.
   The enlargement settings can be between 1.1 and 10 times.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

The scan indicator settings on page 141
Settings for accept tap when pressing or releasing on scanning selection on page 143

2.4.4 Settings for accept tap when pressing or releasing on scanning selection

There is the option to define whether advance and select is to be performed the moment you press or the moment you release. The option to release allows the user to hover over the cells and release when reaching the desired cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. From **Accept tap:** select one of the following options:
   - **on press**
   - **on release**
3. Click **OK**.

See also

The scan indicator settings on page 141
Displaying selected cell enlarged on scanning selection on page 142

2.4.5 Play sound on advance

A default sound can be played on advance from one cell to another cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. Select the **Sound on advance** option.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Play sound when selecting on scanning selection on page 143

2.4.6 Play sound when selecting on scanning selection

A default sound can be played on selection of a cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. Select the **Sound on selection** option.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Play sound on advance on page 143

2.4.7 Skipping cells with no action

To scan quicker and more efficiently, you can skip the cells that have no action linked to them.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. Select the **Skip cells with no action** option.
4. Click **OK**.

2.4.8 Using the mouse while scanning

You can move and use the mouse to select cells in scanning mode.

NOTE
If you enable this option, you can no longer use the mouse buttons as switches to select a cell, column or row when scanning.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. Select the **Allow mouse during scanning** option.
4. Click **OK**.

2.4.9 Setting the auditory feedback on scanning selection

If you select auditory feedback, the scan word in each cell, row or column is said aloud when your mouse pointer moves over the word. If a scan word has not been specified, the text of the cell is said aloud. If there is no text, the label of the cell is said aloud. You can opt to have the text of the cell spoken aloud instead of the label, if a scan word has not been specified.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **General** tab.
3. Select the **Auditory scanning** option.
   The scan word is said aloud. If a scan word has not been specified, the text of the cell is said aloud. If there is no text, the label of the cell is said aloud.
4. As necessary, click the **Voice:** option to edit the speech. See The speech settings on page 157.

   NOTE
   You can opt to have auditory feedback spoken in another language, by a different voice, with a different voice volume and at a different speed.

5. As required, select the **Use label if no scanword is specified** option.
   The cell label will be said aloud instead of the text, if no scan word is available.
6. From the **Channel:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Left channel	If you select this option, you will hear the scanwords through the left speaker and all other speech messages through the right speaker.
Right channel	If you select this option, you will hear the scanwords through the right speaker and all other speech messages through the left speaker.
Both channels (stereo)	If you select this option, you will hear the scanwords and all other speech messages through both speakers.

7. Click **OK**.

2.4.10 The scanning method settings

Setting the scanning method defines how to advance, select, accept tap and scan.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **Method** tab.
3. From the **Advance:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Automatic	Automatic advance scanning
Tap switch 1	Scanning advances each time you press switch 1.
Hold switch 1	Scanning advances as long as you hold switch 1.

4. From the **Select:** drop-down list, select one of the following options.

NOTE
*The options available in **Select:** depend on what you choose in **Advance:**.*

Option	Explanation
Tap switch 1	The current cell, column or row is selected as soon as you press switch 1.
Tap switch 2	The current cell, column or row is selected as soon as you press switch 2.
Automatic (after timeout)	After a set period of time has passed without pressing or holding the switch, the current cell, row or column is selected.
Hold same switch	Hold the switch you also use for scanning. After a set period of time has passed, the cell is selected.
Release switch 1	Scanning stops as soon as you release the switch. At that moment the cell, row or column you were scanning when you released the switch, is selected.

5. From the **Accept tap:** field, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
on press	A cell, row or column is selected when the switch is pressed. When scanning with 1 switch, the **Repeat selection while pressed** option appears at the bottom. Select this option to allow the selection to be repeated when the switch is pressed. For example: in a cell to increase the volume.
on release	A cell, row or column is selected when the switch is released.

6. From the **Method:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Linear	All cells undergo linear scanning, from left to right, starting with the top row.
Linear (column)	All cells undergo linear scanning, from top to bottom, starting at the top left.
Snake	The first row of the grid is scanned from left to right, the second row from right to left, etc.
Snake (column)	The first row of the grid is scanned from top to bottom, the second row from bottom to top, etc.
Row-column	First the grid is scanned row by row and then the cells are scanned in the selected row.
Column-row	First the grid is scanned column by column and then the cells are scanned in the selected column.

7. As required, select the **Backtrack** option. The first time you make a selection, scanning continues in the reverse order (from right to left or from bottom to top). Only the next selection will be effective.

NOTE
*Enabling this option depends on what you choose in **Advance:**.*

8. As required, select the **Step1 - Step2 - Selection** option. Advance starts with switch 1, selection is done with switch 2. Advance restarts with switch 2, selection is then done with switch 1. The advance restarts again with switch 1, and selection is done with switch 2. The advance and selection options continue to alternate.

NOTE
*This option can only be enabled if done in **Tap switch 1** steps, selecting **Tap switch 2** and using the **Row-column** or **Column-row** method.*

9. As required, uncheck the **Use scangroups** option, if you do not want to use the self-configured scan groups. This option is selected by default.
10. As required, select the **Prescan in blocks** option. The communication grid is scanned in blocks. You can specify the size of the blocks used.
11. Click **OK**.

See also

Preference settings on scanning on page 145
Timing settings on scanning on page 146
Scan group settings on page 147

2.4.11 Preference settings on scanning

CAUTION

Start by specifying the scan method! The preferences that can be specified, depend on the defined scanning method. See The scanning method settings *on page 144.*

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **Preferences** tab.
3. In the **Jump to beginning** option group, select the following options as required:

Option	Explanation
After selection of a cell	If you select this option, scanning will proceed from the top left cell (or the first row/column, depending on the current scanning method) of the grid, after you have made a selection.
With switch 2	If you select this option, the user can use switch 2 (for example the right mouse button) to return to the first cell in the grid. If this option has been disabled and scanning has already proceeded past the desired cell, then the user needs to scan the entire grid before there is the possibility to return to the desired cell.
Automatic first step	If you carry out the steps using a switch, then this option ensures that scanning always starts by immediately visualizing the first box. By disabling this option, you first need to press the step switch to mark the first cell.

4. In the **Return from wrong group selection** option group, select the following options as required:

Option	Explanation
Select on entire group highlight	If you select this option, then the entire group is highlighted after scanning has passed through all the cells of the group. Press the switch to go to the next group.
After number of rounds:	If you select this option, then the cells of a selected row or column are scanned during a specific number of rounds. If after the specified number of rounds a selection still has not been made, then scanning will continue with the next row, column or group.

5. In the **Pause scanning** option group, select the following options as required:

Option	Explanation
After selection of a cell	If you select this option, scanning is temporarily interrupted if the user has made a selection. Press a switch to resume scanning.
With switch 2	If you select this option, scanning is temporarily interrupted if the user presses switch 2. This option can only be used in scanning mode with 1 switch. Press switch 1 to resume scanning.
After number of rounds:	If you select this option, then scanning stops automatically if no selection has been made within a number of specified rounds.

See also

The scanning method settings on page 144
Timing settings on scanning on page 146

2.4.12 Timing settings on scanning

CAUTION

Start by specifying the scan method! The timing that can be set, depends on the specified scanning method. See The scanning method settings *on page 144.*

1. Choose **Tools** > **Scanning selection...**.
2. Choose the **Timing** tab.
3. As required, select one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Advance time	If scanning has been specified to continue automatically, you can change the period of time between scanning one cell/row/column and the next cell/row/column.

Option	Explanation
Backward step time	If the **Backtrack** option has been specified on the **Method** tab, you can change the Backward step time, the period of time between scanning one cell/row/column and the next cell/row/column.
Wait after group selection	You can change the period of time after which scanning continues after selecting a row, column or group.
Post selection time	After a selection, all input from the selection switch is ignored for this period of time.
Hold time	You can change the length of time you need to tap and hold the switch before the selection is performed.
Auto select time	Once the **Automatic (after timeout)** option has been configured in the **Method** tab, you can change the period of time for automatic selection.
Post advance time	After a step, all input from the step switch is ignored for this period of time. You can use this to avoid quick unintentional successive steps.

4. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the time, click on + to increase the time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the time, drag it to the right to increase the time.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

The scanning method settings on page 144
Preference settings on scanning on page 145

2.4.13 Scan group settings

You can set your preferred scan groups. During the scan, the program first runs through the scan groups, and only then preforms the scanning method that has been specified (for example **Row-column**) in the selected scan group. A total of 10 scan groups can be set. The scan groups are run from 1 to 10.

After one scan group has been set, only the cells that are in a scan group are scanned. Cells that are not in any scan group, are not scanned! Cells that are not in any scan group can still be selected using the mouse. See Using the mouse while scanning on page 144.

If no scan groups have been set, scanning will be performed according to the set scanning method.

1. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
2. Select the cells you want to add to a scan group.
3. Right-click the selection and choose **Scangroup** and then one of the following options:
   - **No scangroup**, the selection is not set as a scan group.
   - **Scangroup 1**, the selection is set as scan group 1 or added to scan group 1.
   - **Scangroup 2**, the selection is set as scan group 2 or added to scan group 2.
   - ...
   - **Scangroup**, the selection is set as scan group 10 or added to scan group 10.
4. Repeat from step 2 to add another scan group.
5. Leave the Edit mode (**F2**).

See also

The scanning method settings on page 144

2.5 Eye control

2.5.1 Set eye control

2.5.1.1 Eye control

Using eye control, devices can be operated in a different way. This mode of operation is suitable for users with very limited movement capabilities. The user operates the application on the screen using his or her eyes.

Mind Express can be used with eye control. Mind Express offers a number of eye control types, which after calibrating the eye control program, you can adjust as well as possible to the needs and skills of the user.

- Alea
- Edge
- Eyetech
- MyGaze
- Tobii

See also

Eye control calibration on page 148

2.5.1.2 Eye control calibration

During calibration, eye control is adjusted to the eyes of the user. The calibration can be carried out again, or calibration dots can be improved in order to adjust eye control to the eyes of the user as much as possible.

Calibration can be done in 3 different ways:

Calibration	Explanation
Through the **Eye tracking** > **Calibrate** action in a cell of the communication grid.	This way, the user can (re)calibrate the existing eye control. This method does NOT improve calibration dots!
Using the **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Calibrate** menu.	This way, the supervisor can (re)calibrate the existing eye control and the supervisor can also improve calibration dots. See (Re)calibrate eye control on page 155.
Using the **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection** menu.	This way, the supervisor can select the type of eye control, set the necessary configurations for the calibration and execute the calibration. The calibration dots can be improved. See Selecting and calibrating the type of eye control on page 148.

See also

Eye control on page 147

2.5.1.3 Selecting and calibrating the type of eye control

After completing the calibration, the calibration data is stored on the device's hard disk and is then used by the eye control camera. The saved calibration is connected to the Mind Express user. So each Mind Express user can save their own calibration data.

1. Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.

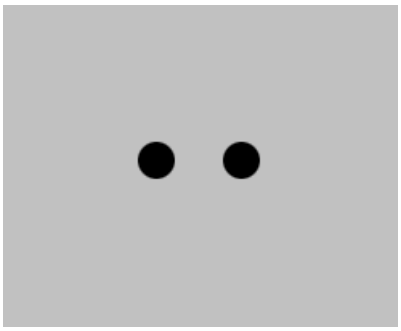
   NOTE
   *If **Eye tracking** does not appear, check that the plug-in has been activated.*

2. From the **Type:** drop-down list, select the type of eye control.
   If no type of eye control is included on the list, the eye control software is not installed or the eye control software is not up to date.
3. Click **Calibrate**.
   The **Calibration settings** dialog appears. Some calibration settings need to be specified by experimenting.
4. Complete the fields below:

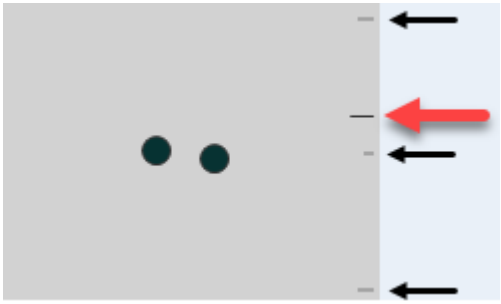
Field	Explanation
Eyes to track	Choose which eye is to be tracked. The default **Left and/or right eye** option is recommended. For users with an abnormality in 1 eye, an eye patch or any other issue, choose the best possible option from the list.
Number of points:	Choose the number of dots you want to use to calibrate. The position of the dots will appear in the adjacent image.
Calibration area:	Users who have difficulty with the size of the calibration area, can reduce the calibration area to 50%. This option is only available for Tobii and Eyetech.
Point speed:	Choose the calibration speed. The speed needs to be determined by experimenting, and depends on the user.
Point size:	Choose the size of the calibration dots.
Point colors:	Click to choose a color for displaying the calibration dots.
Use image:	Select this option and select an image. The dots are replaced by the selected image. Tip: use an animation if the user has difficulty focusing.
Automatic calibration	Select this option for a fully automatic calibration. For a calibration that is not automatic, you will need to confirm to go to each next calibration dot. This can be done by pressing a button, clicking the left mouse button or touching the touch screen.
Random calibration points	Select this option if you want the calibration dots to appear randomly. With a fixed order, users are sometimes too quick to look at the next calibration dot, and as a result the calibration is not completed correctly.

Field	Explanation
Camera images	This option is only available for Eyetech. This option displays the camera images of the eyes, instead of the 2 full black circles. The image appears in the picture above this option.

5. Adjust the position of the eye control and/or the user, so that the eyes appear in the middle of the gray screen.



6. Select the **Show distance** option (only in Tobii).
Guides appear on the right side of the gray screen. Adjust the position of the eye control and/or user, so that the dash (1) is as close as possible to the center guide.



7. Click **Calibrate**.
Calibration is started. The user looks at the first calibration dot and continues with the calibration procedure until completed.
8. If you are working with:
   - Tobii, Eyetech or MyGaze: go to the next step.
   - a different type of eye control: go to the last page.
9. After the calibration, one of the following results appears:

Background	Explanation
Green	The calibration was successful. Eye control will work accurately.
Amber	Calibration can be improved. Eye control can be used but will be less accurate in some areas on the screen. These areas can be improved. See the next step.
Red	Calibration was not successful. Improving or re-calibrating eye control is recommended.

10. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Recalibrate or F3	Choose this option if there are too many poorly calibrated dots. This option restarts the calibration process and all dots must be re-calibrated. Go back to step 3.
Improve or F4	Choose this option if you do not want to perform a full re-calibration. This option allows you to calibrate one or more dots individually. When choosing this option, the background color dispersal and each dot receives an individual color (green, orange or red). Choose a dot that you want to re-calibrate by clicking on the dot. The dot is readied for the user to focus on. The re-calibration of the dot is started by pressing a button, a mouse click or by tapping on the screen. The re-calibration of the selected dot can affect the calibration of the other dots. In Tobii and Eyetech, the best calibration result is always saved. In MyGaze, the last calibration result is saved. Go back to step 3.

Option	Explanation
Accept or F5	Choose this option if the calibration is good (preferably green background) or if the calibration is acceptable and any improvement is difficult. Eye control can be used immediately. Go to the next step.

TIP
The calibration can be canceled at any time by pressing ESC. If there was a previous calibration, the previous calibration is used.

11. Use eye control.

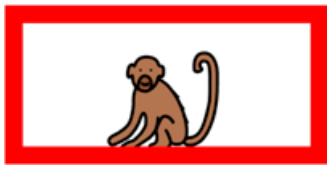
See also

Activating/deactivating an add-on on page 157

2.5.1.4 The selection indicator settings on eye control selection

You can configure how to visually display the selected cell using the selection indicator.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. From the **Selection indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication that the cell has been selected.
Border	A thin border appears around the cell. 
Border (large)	A wide border appears around the cell. 
Border (large x2)	An extra wide border appears around the cell. 
Inverse	The selected cell is inverted. 
Circle (bottom)	In the bottom-right of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 
Circle (top)	In the top-left of the selected cell, a full circle appears.

Field	Explanation
	
Circle (centre)	In the center of the selected cell, a full circle appears. 

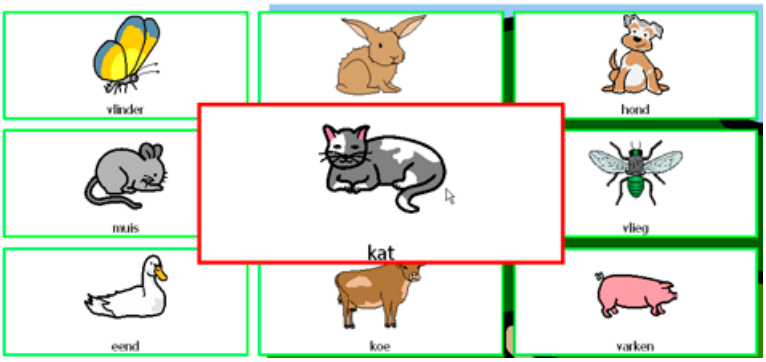
3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Selection indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Displaying selected cell enlarged on eye control selection on page 151
Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on eye control on page 151
Play sound on eye control selection on page 152

2.5.1.5 Displaying selected cell enlarged on eye control selection

When you select a cell, you can enlarge the cell. You can specify how many times to enlarge the cell.



1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. Select the **Enlarge cell** option.
3. Move the slider to set the enlargement.
   The enlargement settings can be between 1.1 and 10 times.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on eye control selection on page 150
Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on eye control on page 151
Play sound on eye control selection on page 152

2.5.1.6 Showing the selection indicator and the mouse pointer on eye control

The selection indicator can be shown, specified cells can be enlarged, the mouse pointer can be made permanently visible.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. Select the **Show indicator during mouse movement** option.

   NOTE
   *If you have also selected the **Enlarge cell** option, the selection indicator is shown when the mouse moves over a cell, and the cell is magnified.*

3. As required, select the **Also show mouse cursor** option to continue to show the mouse during a mouse movement.

   NOTE
   In devices such as the Smart you will only be able to use this option if you connect an external mouse to the device.

See also

The selection indicator settings on eye control selection on page 150
Displaying selected cell enlarged on eye control selection on page 151

2.5.1.7 Play sound on eye control selection

A default sound can be played on selection of a cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. Select the **Sound on selection** option.
3. Click **OK**.

See also

The selection indicator settings on eye control selection on page 150
Displaying selected cell enlarged on eye control selection on page 151

2.5.1.8 The dwell selection on eye control selection

When using dwell selection, the indicated cell is automatically selected after a specified dwell time.

For example: if you point to the same cell for 2 seconds, then that cell is automatically selected after 2 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. Select the **Dwell selection** option.
3. As required, select the **Repeat dwell** option.
   The dwell selection is repeated each time the selected period passes. If a dwell selection time of 2 seconds has been configured, then the cell indicated by the pointer will be selected automatically every 2 seconds, until the pointer is moved to another cell. This can be useful when compiling words with a same letter sequence.
4. Click **OK**.

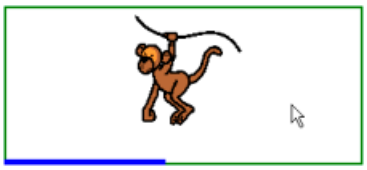
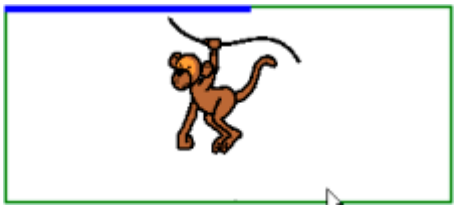
See also

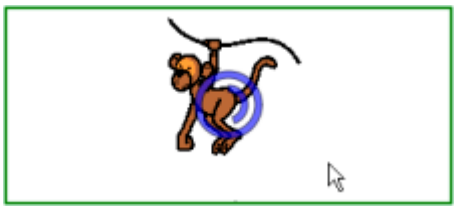
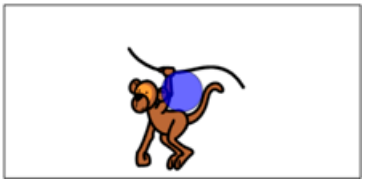
The dwell indicator settings on eye control on page 152
The external dwell jitter margin settings (on eye control) on page 153
The dwell time settings on eye control selection on page 153
Setting the dwell memory time on eye control selection on page 154

2.5.1.9 The dwell indicator settings on eye control

You can configure how to visually display dwell time using the dwell indicator. You can choose whether to display dwell time progress using a bar or a clock. The color of the bar or clock can also be configured.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. From the **Dwell Indicator:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Field	Explanation
None	There is no visual indication of dwell time
Bar on Bottom	A bar appears at the bottom. 
Bar at Top	A bar appears at the top. 
Full circle clock	A complete clock appears.

Field	Explanation
	
Hollow clock	A hollow clock appears. 
Circle (on selection)	A full circle appears when selected. 

3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Dwell Indicator:** drop-down list, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The dwell selection on eye control selection on page 152
The external dwell jitter margin settings (on eye control) on page 153
The dwell time settings on eye control selection on page 153
Setting the dwell memory time on eye control selection on page 154

2.5.1.10The external dwell jitter margin settings (on eye control)

If you want to use dwell outside of Mind Express, then you can specify the area within which to dwell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. Select the **Dwell selection** option.
3. In the **External dwelling jitter margin:** field, enter the size (in pixels) of the dwell area. If the mouse pointer leaves this area, a new dwelling starts.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The dwell selection on eye control selection on page 152
The dwell indicator settings on eye control on page 152
The dwell time settings on eye control selection on page 153
Setting the dwell memory time on eye control selection on page 154

2.5.1.11The dwell time settings on eye control selection

When using dwell selection, the indicated cell is automatically selected after the specified dwell time. The dwell time can be set between 0.1 and 15 seconds.

For example: if you point to the same cell for 2 seconds, then that cell is automatically selected after 2 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Dwell time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease dwell time, click on + to increase dwell time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease dwell time, drag it to the right to increase dwell time.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The dwell selection on eye control selection on page 152
The dwell indicator settings on eye control on page 152
The external dwell jitter margin settings (on eye control) on page 153
Setting the dwell memory time on eye control selection on page 154

2.5.1.12 Setting the dwell memory time on eye control selection

Using dwell memory time, you can set the delay after which dwell time is saved in memory. This option can be set for users struggling to remain on a cell with their eyes for the entire dwell time.

For example, the dwell time needed to continue with selection is set to 2 seconds and the dwell time memory is set to 1 second. The user looks at cell A for 1.5 seconds. This time (1.5 seconds) is greater than the set dwell memory time (1 second), so the amount of time (1.5 seconds) is stored in memory. Then the user looks at cell B for 0.5 seconds. This time (0.5 seconds) is less than the dwell memory time (1 second) and is therefore not stored in memory. Then, the user looks at cell A for more than 0.5 seconds. Cell A is selected. So, the user has looked at cell A for more than 2 seconds in total, of which 1.5 seconds was stored in memory in the first action.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Dwell memory time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the dwell memory time, click on + to increase the dwell memory time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the dwell memory time, drag it to the right to increase the dwell memory time.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The dwell selection on eye control selection on page 152
The dwell indicator settings on eye control on page 152
The external dwell jitter margin settings (on eye control) on page 153
The dwell time settings on eye control selection on page 153

2.5.1.13 Using a switch on eye control

You can use eye control in combination with a switch. For example, you can use eye control to point and the switch to select. The switch can be used in combination with dwell selection and selection by blinking.

Do one of the following:

- Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Switch**.
- Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**, select the **Switch** option and click **Ok**.

2.5.1.14 Blinking on eye control settings

The user can make a selection by blinking. Because not every eye blink should be made a selection, the minimum and maximum blink time must be set by experimenting.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. Select the **Blink** option.
3. From the **Timing** options group, click **Minimum blink time**.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the time, click on + to increase the time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the time, drag it to the right to increase the time.
5. From the **Timing** options group, click **Maximum blink time**.
6. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the time, click on + to increase the time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the time, drag it to the right to increase the time.
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Enabling or disabling blinking on eye control on page 154

2.5.1.15 Enabling or disabling blinking on eye control

You can enable or disable select by blinking on eye control. For example: in the morning you can enable select by blinking and in the afternoon disable it and continue by using a switch to select.

Do one of the following:

- Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Blink**
- Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**, select the **Blink** option and click **OK**.

See also

Blinking on eye control settings on page 154

2.5.1.16Accept tap when pressing or releasing settings on eye control

With eye control a switch can be used to make a selection. There is the option to define whether selection is to be performed at the moment of pressing or releasing the switch. The select option to release allows the user to further view the cells and only release the switch at the desired cell.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. From **Select:** select one of the following options:
   - **on press**
   - **on release**
3. Click **OK**.

2.5.1.17The post selection time settings on eye control selection

To prevent the user from indicating the same cell several times, you can set a post selection time. For example: a post selection time of 2 seconds will ensure that after selecting a cell, for a period of 2 seconds, no other cell can be selected. The post selection time can be set between 0 and 15 seconds.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Selection**.
2. From the **Timing** options group, click **Post selection time**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click on - to decrease the post selection time, click on + to increase the post selection time.
   - Drag the slider to the left to decrease the post selection time, drag it to the right to increase the post selection time.
4. Click **OK**.

2.5.1.18(Re)calibrate eye control

If eye control does not work as expected, you can recalibrate the eye control. If you are using a different eye control or if you wish to enter different calibration settings, see Selecting and calibrating the type of eye control on page 148.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Calibrate**.
   Calibration is started. The user looks at the first calibration dot and continues with the calibration procedure until completed.
2. If you are working with:
   - Tobii, Eyetech or MyGaze: go to the next step.
   - a different type of eye control: go to the last page.
3. After the calibration, one of the following results appears:

Background	Explanation
Green	The calibration was successful.
Amber	At least one calibration dot can be improved.
Red	At least one calibration dot is not calibrated correctly. The bad dots must be re-calibrated or the calibration must be performed again completely.

4. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Recalibrate or F3	Choose this option if there are too many poorly calibrated dots. This option restarts the calibration process and all dots must be re-calibrated. Go back to step 3.
Improve or F4	Choose this option if there are only a few dots that need to be re-calibrated. Choose a dot that you want to recalibrate. The re-calibration of the selected dot can affect the calibration of the other dots. In Tobii and Eyetech, the best calibration result is always saved. In MyGaze, the last calibration result is saved. Go back to step 3.
Accept or F5	Choose this option if the calibration is good (preferably green background) or if the calibration is acceptable and any improvement is difficult. Eye control can be used immediately.

Option	Explanation
	Go to the next step.

5. Use eye control.

2.5.1.19Improving the calibration (only in Tobii)

When using Tobii eye control, you can improve individual calibration dots of the eye control.

NOTE
With Eyetech and MyGaze you can only correct the calibration at the end of the calibration procedure. So not afterwards, as was the case with the Tobii.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Eye tracking** > **Calibrate**.
2. Choose **Improve calibration**.
   Mind Express checks whether the current calibration in use, matches the user's last calibration. If this is not the case, the following message appears: `It was detected that the eye control camera does NOT contain the latest Mind Express calibration. Do you want to restore it?` If Yes, then the Mind Express calibration will be loaded and you can continue with the next step. If No, the procedure will be aborted and the current calibration will be saved.
3. The calibration appears with one of the following results:

Background	Explanation
Green	The calibration was successful.
Amber	At least one calibration dot can be improved.
Red	At least one calibration dot is not calibrated correctly. The bad dots must be re-calibrated or the calibration must be performed again completely.

4. Choose one of the following options:

Option	Explanation
Recalibrate or F3	Choose this option if there are too many poorly calibrated dots. This option restarts the calibration process and all dots must be re-calibrated. Go back to step 3.
Improve or F4	Choose this option if there are only a few dots that need to be re-calibrated. Choose a dot that you want to recalibrate. The re-calibration of the selected dot can affect the calibration of the other dots. In Tobii and Eyetech, the best calibration result is always saved. In MyGaze, the last calibration result is saved. Go back to step 3.
Accept or F5	Choose this option if the calibration is good (preferably green background) or if the calibration is acceptable and any improvement is difficult. Eye control can be used immediately. Go to the next step.

5. Use eye control.

2.5.1.20Starting the eye control camera

After you stop the eye control camera, you can restart the eye control camera through the menu.

Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Start camera**.
The camera starts and the Eye Control mode is activated.

2.5.1.21Stop the eye control camera

You can stop using the camera during eye control. For example, if you want to use a different type of camera, or if you want to completely stop eye control and reactivate Mouse mode.

Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Stop camera**.
Eye control is stopped an Mouse mode is activated.

2.5.1.22Show eyes in pause cell

Instead of a using a cell of the **Eye tracking: monitor** type, you can also show the eyes in the cell of the type **Eye tracking: pause field**. This is so you can verify whether the eyes are properly observed by eye control when eye control is paused. A full circle means that the eye is properly observed, a hollow circle means that the eye is not observed by eye control.

Showing the eyes in the pause cell will NOT work when using eye control of Alea.

Choose **Extra** > **Eye tracking** > **Eyes in pause**.

To reactivate eye control, you must re-select the cell. When selecting the cell, dwell works, but the dwell symbol is not displayed because the eyes are displayed in this cell.

2.5.2 Tobii

NOTE
To run the Tobii PCEyeGo or Tobii PCEye Mini eye control on a device with Mind Express from version 4.3.0, you will need to install Gaze Interaction Software 2.8.1.30 or higher.

If you have not yet installed PCEye software on your device, start by installing the PCEye Software Suite. You can find the PCEye Suite Web Installer in the PCEye Software Suite group on the website https://www.tobiidynavox.com/support-training/downloads/pceye-1/pceye-mini2/software/.

If you have already installed PCEye software on your device, you need to verify if the software is up to date. Launch the PCEye Update Notifier program and download the new updates.

To find out which version of the Gaze Interaction Software is running on your device, start the Gaze Interaction Settings program and select System Information. Exit the program!

During the installation of the PCEye Software Suite, you will need to proceed with the PCEye Configuration Guide program. Make sure that you configure the screen dimensions! If you have forgotten to do this, start the PCEye Configuration Guide program and configure the screen dimensions.

The settings in Mind Express are exclusive to Mind Express and do not affect the settings in the Gaze Interaction Settings or the Windows Control settings. It is recommended to disable the Gaze Interaction Settings program and the Windows Control program when using Mind Express, to avoid possible conflicts.

3 Activating/deactivating an add-on

In Mind Express, the different add-ons can be activated or deactivated.

For example if you deactivate the **Address book** add-on, you will no longer find **Address book** in the menu.

You will no longer be able to add any address book actions or address book cells using the **Edit** window.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Add-ons**.
2. Select the check box of the add-ons you want to activate and deselect the check box of the add-ons you want to deactivate.
3. Click **OK**.
   A message is displayed to reboot Mind Express.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Exit Mind Express and reboot Mind Express.

4 The speech settings

The messages that you assign to the cells in the communication grid are spoken out loud by the speech output device. You can decide on the speech characteristics, such as language, voice, voice volume, overall volume and speaking rate.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech**.
2. From the **Language:** drop-down list, select the language you want to hear.
3. From the **Voice:** drop-down list, select the voice you want to hear.
4. Move the **Voice volume:** volume slider to change the volume of the voice.
5. Move the **General volume:** slider to change the volume on the device.
6. Move the **Speed:** slider to change the reading speed.
7. Click to check the results of your settings.

   NOTE
   By default, these will be 1 2 3 4 5. You can replace the text by a word or sentence.

8. Click **OK**.

5 The speech dictionary settings

5.1 The speech dictionary settings

It is possible that some words are not pronounced correctly. For example, names or words from a different language. You can add the word with its new pronunciation to a speech dictionary. There is also the option to add multiple speech dictionaries:

- speech dictionaries per language
- speech dictionaries per user, if the device is used by several people
- speech dictionaries per voice A Realspeak voice uses a different phonetic format from a Acapela voice.

See also

Using a speech dictionary on page 158
Copying a speech dictionary on page 158
Adding a new speech dictionary on page 158
Deleting a speech dictionary on page 158

5.2 Using a speech dictionary

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech dictionary...**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose the speech dictionary you want to use.
3. Click **OK**.

5.3 Copying a speech dictionary

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech dictionary...**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose the speech dictionary you want to copy.
3. Click **Copy dictionary** .
4. Enter the name of the dictionary in the **Name:** field.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**.

5.4 Adding a new speech dictionary

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech dictionary...**.
2. Click **Add dictionary** .
3. Enter the name of the dictionary in the **Name:** field.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Deleting a speech dictionary on page 158
Changing the pronunciation of a word on page 158

5.5 Deleting a speech dictionary

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech dictionary...**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose the speech dictionary you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete dictionary** .
4. Confirm in the **Mind Express** dialog.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new speech dictionary on page 158

5.6 Changing the pronunciation of a word

If the pronunciation of a word is not correct, you can add the word with the new pronunciation to the speech dictionary. The word is written phonetically and can be listened to immediately.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech dictionary...**.
2. From the drop-down list, select the speech dictionary that you want to add a word to.
3. Click the **Word** field and enter the word with the incorrect pronunciation.
4. Click the **New pronunciation:** field and enter the correct pronunciation of the word.
5. As required, select **Phonetic**, if you have used the phonetic transcription in the **New pronunciation:** field.

NOTE
*If you do not select **Phonetic**, you can write it as you would say it.*

NOTE
For Realspeak there is a different phonetic alphabet than for Acapela. See Realspeak on page 178.

CAUTION
Users of Acapela on the Zingui or on the Smart need also to place everything between "\prn=" en "\".

6. Click on to listen to the new pronunciation.
7. Click **Add item**.
   The word appears in the word list of the speech dictionary.
8. To add more words, repeat from step 4.
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new speech dictionary on page 158
Deleting a word from a speech dictionary on page 159

5.7 Deleting a word from a speech dictionary

1. Choose **Tools** > **Speech dictionary...**.
2. From the drop-down list, select the speech dictionary that you want to delete a word from.
3. Select the word from the word list.
4. In the bottom, click **Delete item**.
5. To delete more words, repeat from step 3.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Changing the pronunciation of a word on page 158

6 Setting the word prediction

6.1 Word prediction

If the user is able to use text, then word prediction can significantly increase the speed of communication. You can set up Mind Express in such a way that these predictions appear in the cells. This allows the user of Mind Express to select these predictions so the sentences can be typed much faster. As soon as the user selects a letter or a word from the communication grid, the predictions will appear in Mind Express.

Word prediction is context-based. This means that word prediction not only attempts to predict the word that is being formed, but also the next word.

6.2 Auto-learning with word prediction settings

You can specify whether to add new words or word pairs to the word list. You can also increase the probability of frequently-used words or word pairs, so the next time they will appear quicker.

NOTE
*If the user frequently enters incorrect words, you are advised to set the **Auto-learn:** option to **Don't learn**.*

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **Options**.
3. From the **Auto-learn:** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

Option	Explanation
Don't learn	Nothing is added to the word list.
Learn frequencies	The more a word is used, the higher the frequency becomes, and the next time the word appears sooner in the word prediction.
Learn words	New words are added to the word list and the frequency of existing words is customized.
Learn word pairs	Consecutive words consisting of words that already have a certain frequency, are added to the word list. With regard to word pairs, the frequency of the word pair is customized.
Learn all	Both the frequencies, words and word pairs are learned.

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Case-sensitive settings on word prediction on page 164
The minimal length settings for word prediction on page 164
Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction on page 164
Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction on page 164
Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction on page 165

6.3 Adding a new word prediction list

For users with a limited vocabulary, there is the option to add a new word prediction list that contains fewer words and word pairs than the default word prediction list.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **New**.
3. In the **Enter new name:** field, enter a name for the new list.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Copying a word prediction list on page 160
Deleting a word prediction list on page 160

6.4 Copying a word prediction list

If you wish to preserve the word prediction list and want to create a personal word prediction list, you can copy the word prediction list. You can then edit the copied word prediction list by deleting words from the list or by adjusting the frequency.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose the word prediction list you want to copy.
3. Click **Copy** .
4. In the **Enter new name:** field, enter a name for the new list.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new word prediction list on page 160
Deleting a word prediction list on page 160

6.5 Deleting a word prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose the word prediction list you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete** .
4. Confirm in the **Mind Express** dialog.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a new word prediction list on page 160
Copying a word prediction list on page 160

6.6 Adding a word to the word prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Edit** .
4. Click **Add new item** .
5. Enter the word in the **New:** field.
6. Enter the frequency in the **Frequency:** field.

   TIP
   A frequency of between 150 and 200 ensures that the word is displayed quickly. With lower frequencies the word is not be displayed quickly and with higher frequencies the word will appear very quickly

7. Click **OK**.

8. Repeat from step 4 to add more words.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Click **OK**.

See also

Deleting a word from the word prediction list on page 161
Editing the frequency of a word in the word prediction list on page 161

6.7 Deleting a word from the word prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the search box, enter the word or the first letter(s) of the word.
5. Click **Search**.
   The list of words is displayed together with the frequency.
6. Select the word from the list.

   NOTE
   *To select multiple contiguous words, use **Shift**, to select multiple non-contiguous words, use **Ctrl**.*

7. Click **Delete**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a word to the word prediction list on page 160
Editing the frequency of a word in the word prediction list on page 161

6.8 Editing the frequency of a word in the word prediction list

By editing the frequency of a word, the word is predicted quicker (increase in frequency) or slower (decrease in frequency).

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the search box, enter the word or the first letter(s) of the word.
5. Click **Search**.
   The list of words is displayed together with the frequency.
6. Do one of the following:
   - Select the word from the list and click on .
   - Double-click on the word.
7. Change the frequency in the **Frequency** field.

   TIP
   A frequency of between 150 and 200 ensures that the word is displayed quickly. With lower frequencies the word is not be displayed quickly and with higher frequencies the word will appear very quickly

8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a word to the word prediction list on page 160
Deleting a word from the word prediction list on page 161

6.9 Creating a word pair

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the search box, enter the word or the first letter(s) of the word.
5. Click **Search**.
   The list of words is displayed together with the frequency.
6. Select the word from the list.

NOTE
If word pairs can be found with the selected word, this button appears . If the button does not appear and consequently there are no word pairs yet with the selected word, then continue with step 8.

7. Click **Show word pairs for the selected word** .
8. Click **Add new item** .
9. In the **New:** field, complete the word pair by adding the second word after the space.

NOTE
*If there were no word pairs yet with the selected word, then enter the complete word pair in the **New:** field. The words must be separated by a space.*

10. Enter the frequency in the **Frequency:** field.

TIP
A frequency of between 150 and 200 ensures that the word pair is displayed quickly. With lower frequencies the word pair will not be displayed quickly and with higher frequencies the word pair will appear very quickly

11. Click **OK**.
12. Repeat from step 8 to create other word pairs with the selected word.
13. Click **OK**.
14. Click **OK**.

See also

Editing the frequency of a word pair on page 162

6.10 Editing the frequency of a word pair

When editing the frequency of a word pair, the word pair is predicted quicker (increase in frequency) or slower (decrease in frequency).

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Edit** .
4. In the search box, enter the word or the first letter(s) of the word.
5. Click **Search** .
   The list of words is displayed together with the frequency.
6. Select the word from the list.

NOTE
If word pairs can be found with the selected word, this button appears .

7. Click **Show word pairs for the selected word** .
8. Click **Add new item** .
9. In the **New:** field, complete the word pair by adding the second word after the space.
10. Enter the frequency in the **Frequency:** field.

TIP
A frequency of between 150 and 200 ensures that the word is displayed quickly. With lower frequencies the word is not be displayed quickly and with higher frequencies the word will appear very quickly

11. Click **OK**.
12. Repeat from step 8 to create other word pairs with the selected word.
13. Click **OK**.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **OK**.

See also

Creating a word pair on page 161

6.11 Adding an abbreviation to the word prediction list

When abbreviations have been added to the word prediction list, and the abbreviation is then entered, the meaning of the abbreviation is shown in the word prediction boxes.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Abbreviations** .
4. Click **Add new item** .
5. Enter the abbreviation in the **Abbreviation:** field.
6. In the **Expansion:** field, enter the meaning of the abbreviation in full.

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK**.

See also

Editing an abbreviation in the word prediction list on page 163
Deleting an abbreviation from the word prediction list on page 163

6.12 Editing an abbreviation in the word prediction list

When abbreviations have been added to the word prediction list, and the abbreviation is then entered, the meaning of the abbreviation is shown in the word prediction boxes.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Abbreviations** .
4. Do one of the following:
   - Select the abbreviation from the list and click on .
   - Double-click the abbreviation.
5. Edit the meaning of the abbreviation in the **Expansion:** field.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding an abbreviation to the word prediction list on page 162
Deleting an abbreviation from the word prediction list on page 163

6.13 Deleting an abbreviation from the word prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Abbreviations** .
4. Select the abbreviation from the list.

   NOTE
   *Use **Shift** to select multiple contiguous abbreviations. To select multiple non-contiguous abbreviations, use **Ctrl**.*

5. Click **Delete** .
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding an abbreviation to the word prediction list on page 162
Editing an abbreviation in the word prediction list on page 163

6.14 Adding, changing or deleting a start word

Start words are words that are displayed at the beginning of a sentence. You can add, change, and delete start words.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Select the word prediction list from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Start words** .
4. Do one of the following:

To a startword ...	Action
add	Click in the window, after the last start word. Enter a space or comma and then type the new start word.
to change	Click on the start word you want to change. Change the start word.
to delete	Double-click on the start word. Press **Delete**.

5. Click **OK**.

6. Click **OK**.

6.15 Case-sensitive settings on word prediction

If you want your word prediction to take into account the use of capitals, you will need to configure the case-sensitive function.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **Options**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Select the **Case sensitive**, so the word predictor will take into account the capitals entered.
   - Deselect **Case sensitive**, so the word predictor will not take into account the capitals entered.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

The minimal length settings for word prediction on page 164
Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction on page 164
Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction on page 164
Auto-learning with word prediction settings on page 159
Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction on page 165

6.16 The minimal length settings for word prediction

You can set the minimal number of characters for a longer word prediction compared to the current written word.

NOTE
If you specify a low value, then word prediction will take longer. If you specify a high value, then the words with a shorter length will no longer be predicted.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **Options**.
3. In the **Minimal length:** field, adjust the value using the arrows.
   You can choose values of between 0 and 10.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Case-sensitive settings on word prediction on page 164
Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction on page 164
Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction on page 164
Auto-learning with word prediction settings on page 159
Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction on page 165

6.17 Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction

You can configure how many times a word prediction is suggested. If the word has not been selected after the specified number of repetitions, then the word is no longer displayed and is replaced by another word.

NOTE
If you specify a low value, then the words will not be repeated frequently. If you specify a high value, then the words will be displayed for longer, but they will replace other words.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **Options**.
3. In the **Maximum repetitions:** field, adjust the value using the arrows.
   You can choose values of between 1 and 10.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Case-sensitive settings on word prediction on page 164
The minimal length settings for word prediction on page 164
Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction on page 164
Auto-learning with word prediction settings on page 159
Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction on page 165

6.18 Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction

You can specify that recently used words are given a higher probability, so they are shown sooner with the next word prediction.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **Options**.
3. From the **Recency priority:** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

Option	Explanation
None	Words already used are not taken into account.
Low	Words already used obtain a slightly higher frequency and are predicted a little quicker.
Normal	Words already used obtain a normal increase in frequency and are predicted quicker.
High	Words already used obtain a high increase in frequency and are predicted much quicker.

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Case-sensitive settings on word prediction on page 164
The minimal length settings for word prediction on page 164
Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction on page 164
Auto-learning with word prediction settings on page 159
Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction on page 165

6.19 Automatic capitalization settings on word prediction

You can automatically display a capital after a full stop (.), an exclamation mark (!) or a question mark(?).

1. Choose **Tools** > **Word prediction...**.
2. Click **Options**.
3. Select the **Automatic capital after '.', '!', '?'** option.
4. Click **OK**.

See also

Case-sensitive settings on word prediction on page 164
The minimal length settings for word prediction on page 164
Setting the maximum number of repetitions for word prediction on page 164
Settings for the priority of recent words in word prediction on page 164
Auto-learning with word prediction settings on page 159

7 Setting the sentence prediction

7.1 Sentence prediction

If the user is able to use text, then sentence prediction can significantly increase the speed of communication. You can set up Mind Express in such a way that these predictions appear in the cells. This allows the user to select these predictions. As soon as the user selects a letter or a word from the communication card, the predictions will appear in the prediction cells of Mind Express. Sentence prediction searches for sentences. If you enter the word 'tea' for example, then the sentence prediction will predict the sentence 'I want a cup of tea'.

NOTE
When you start using Mind Express for the first time, sentence prediction is empty.

7.2 Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Sentence prediction...**.
2. Click in the top of the field.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Enter a word that occurs in the sentence.
   - Enter part of the sentence.
4. Click the **Search** button.
   All sentences that match the search are displayed.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Adding a sentence to the word prediction list on page 166

Automatically add sentences to sentence prediction on page 166
Editing a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 166
Deleting a sentence from the word prediction list on page 166

7.3 Adding a sentence to the word prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Sentence prediction...**.
2. Click **Add sentence** .
3. Enter the sentence in the **Sentence:** field.
4. Enter the frequency in the **Frequency:** field.

   TIP
   A frequency of between 150 and 200 ensures that the sentence is displayed quickly. Lower frequencies will not allow the sentence to display quickly and higher frequencies will allow the sentence to display very quickly.
5. Click **OK**.

See also

Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 165
Automatically add sentences to sentence prediction on page 166
Editing a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 166
Deleting a sentence from the word prediction list on page 166

7.4 Automatically add sentences to sentence prediction

When you start using Mind Express for the first time, sentence prediction is empty. To quickly fill the sentence prediction list, you can automatically add sentences while reading them.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Sentence prediction...**.
2. Select the **Add sentences when Message box is read** option at the bottom.
3. Click **OK**.
   As long as this option is selected, every sentence that is read will be added to the sentence prediction list.

See also

Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 165
Adding a sentence to the word prediction list on page 166
Editing a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 166
Deleting a sentence from the word prediction list on page 166

7.5 Editing a sentence in the sentence prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Sentence prediction...**.
2. Find the sentence you want to customize. Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 165
3. Click on the sentence you want to customize.
4. Click **Edit sentence** .
5. As required, change the sentence in the **Sentence:** field and/or change the frequency of the sentence in the **Frequency:** field.
6. Tap on **OK**.

See also

Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 165
Adding a sentence to the word prediction list on page 166
Automatically add sentences to sentence prediction on page 166
Deleting a sentence from the word prediction list on page 166

7.6 Deleting a sentence from the word prediction list

1. Choose **Tools** > **Sentence prediction...**.
2. Find the sentence you want to delete. Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 165
3. Click on the sentence you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete item** .
5. Confirm in the Mind Express dialog.
6. Click **OK**.

See also

Finding a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 165

Adding a sentence to the word prediction list on page 166
Automatically add sentences to sentence prediction on page 166
Editing a sentence in the sentence prediction list on page 166

8 Enabling or disabling a symbol set

8.1 Enabling or disabling a symbol set

If you do not wish to update or use a particular symbol set in Mind Express, it may be useful to disable it.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Symbol sets...**.
2. Deselect the symbol sets you do not want to use. Select the symbol sets you do want to use.
3. Click **OK**.

See also

Showing the use of Mind Express symbol sets on page 19

9 Setting the user-specific options

9.1 Configuring the start-up options

You can set the mode you want Mind Express to start up in; perhaps you want the title bar and the menu to be visible, or you may want access to the menu to be password protected, which document should appear when launched, or whether the Mind Express window should always be on top.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. From the **Startup in:** drop-down list select the mode you want to start up in.
   - **Mouse**
   - **Joystick**
   - **Scanning**
   - **Eye tracking**

   NOTE
   On some devices (such as the Smart), you can only start up in Mouse mode.

3. From the **Startup with:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Caption and menu**, to start up with the caption and the menu visible. Only choose this option if the user is familiar with configuring the device.
   - **Caption only**, to start up with the menu hidden. This option is recommended as a start-up option for users who are also allowed to minimize, resize or shut down the Mind Express window.
   - **No caption/no menu**, to start up with the caption and the menu hidden. This option is recommended as a start-up option for users who must stay within the Mind Express window.

   NOTE
   *On some devices (such as the Smart), you can only choose between start up with **Menu** and **No menu**.*

   TIP
   *If the menu and the caption are hidden, press **ESC** to make them visible again.*

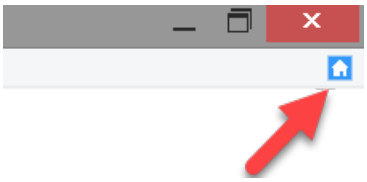
   TIP
   *To hide the menu and caption again, right-click on the caption or menu bar and select the **Show Caption** option to hide the caption and the menu or select the **Show Menu** option to hide the menu bar.*

4. As required, select the **Menu password:** option. Enter a password.

   If the menu is hidden and there is a menu password, then the shortcut keys cannot be used.

   If you show the menu, you will be prompted for a password.
5. As required, select the **Start document:** option.
6. From the drop-down list, select the file that contains the document.
7. Do one of the following:
   - Click on the file and click **Open**.
   - Double-click the file.
8. Select the **Home button:** option and click ... to select the document that you want to open when you press the Home button.

   The Home button is on the far right of the menu bar.



9. As required, select the **Always on top** option.
   The Mind Express window is always displayed as the window on top.
10. Click **OK**.

See also

Edit option settings on page 168
The record settings on page 168
Allow typing in a message on page 169
The software language settings on page 169
The time format settings on page 169
Auto save changes on page 170

9.2 Displaying the document on a device display

You can display the communication grid in the size of the device you are creating the communication grid for. So you can create a communication grid on your computer that has the correct size for the device. This way you can check that everything is legible and displayed correctly before transferring the communication grid to the device.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. Select the **Device Mode** option and choose the desired display from the drop-down list.
   Example: Zingui 2
3. Click **OK**.

9.3 Edit option settings

You can set an indicator to show that you are working in Edit mode and enable a toggle function between Mouse mode and Edit mode.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. As required, select the **Edit mode indicator** option.
   When the user is working in Edit mode, a colored bar will flash in the bottom of the window.
3. As required, click on the colored cell next to the **Edit mode indicator** option, and select a color and click **OK**.
4. As required, select the **Open editor by right-clicking in mouse mode** option.
   You can toggle quickly between Mouse mode and Edit mode by right-clicking.

See also

Configuring the start-up options on page 167
The record settings on page 168
Allow typing in a message on page 169
The software language settings on page 169
The time format settings on page 169
Auto save changes on page 170

9.4 The record settings

You can specify if recordings can be made in Mouse mode. It is possible to alter the recording quality.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. As required, select the **Quick recording** option and from the drop-down list select **After [x] seconds**, i.e. after how many seconds you want the Recording dialog to appear.
   Example: After clicking and holding on the cell for 5 seconds, the Recording dialog is displayed.

   NOTE
   In the Smart and the Zingui the current document is saved automatically after making a quick recording.

3. Next to the **Recording:** field, select the following options as required:

Option	Explanation
AGC	AGC (Automatic Gain Control) ensures that all recordings have more or less the same volume.

Option	Explanation
Noise Reduction	This option removes noise from the recordings. For recordings in a quiet environment we recommend to switch off noise reduction. By using the noise reduction option hissing sounds may also be lost.

4. Click **OK**.

See also

Configuring the start-up options on page 167
Edit option settings on page 168
Allow typing in a message on page 169
The software language settings on page 169
The time format settings on page 169
Auto save changes on page 170

9.5 Allow typing in a message

You can allow the keyboard to be used to type directly in a message in Mouse mode.

CAUTION
Make sure this option is always enabled! Unless you are playing games and no changes are allowed to be made in the message box.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. As required, select the **Allow typing in Message box** option.

See also

Configuring the start-up options on page 167
Edit option settings on page 168
The record settings on page 168
The software language settings on page 169
The time format settings on page 169
Auto save changes on page 170

9.6 The software language settings

The language of the software or interface can be changed to the language of the user.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. From the **Program language:** drop-down list, select the language you want to use for Mind Express.
3. Click **OK**.

See also

Configuring the start-up options on page 167
Edit option settings on page 168
The record settings on page 168
Allow typing in a message on page 169
The time format settings on page 169
Auto save changes on page 170

9.7 The time format settings

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. From the **Time format:** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **24h (15:30)**, the time is displayed as a 24-hour clock.
   - **12h (3:30)**, the time is displayed as a 12-hour clock.
   - **AM/PM (3:30 PM)**, the time is displayed with an AM (morning) and PM (afternoon) indication.
3. Click **OK**.

See also

Configuring the start-up options on page 167
Edit option settings on page 168
The record settings on page 168
Allow typing in a message on page 169
The software language settings on page 169

Auto save changes on page 170

9.8 Setting the size unit

You can set the Mind Express measurement unit to mm or inches. When printing a page or setting the document preferences, the size is displayed in the specified unit.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. From the **Measurement unit** drop-down list, select one of the following units:
   - **mm**
   - **inch**
3. Click **OK**.

9.9 Auto save changes

You can automatically save all the changes you make to a document. You can even specify the time interval for saving the changes. This option is very useful when you are editing a document. Disable this option if you do not want anything to be changed in the document.

1. Choose **Tools** > **Options**.
2. Select the **Save changes every** X **minutes** option.
3. Enter after how many minutes you want the changes to be saved. You can enter a value of between 1 and 15.

See also

Configuring the start-up options on page 167
Edit option settings on page 168
The record settings on page 168
Allow typing in a message on page 169
The software language settings on page 169
The time format settings on page 169

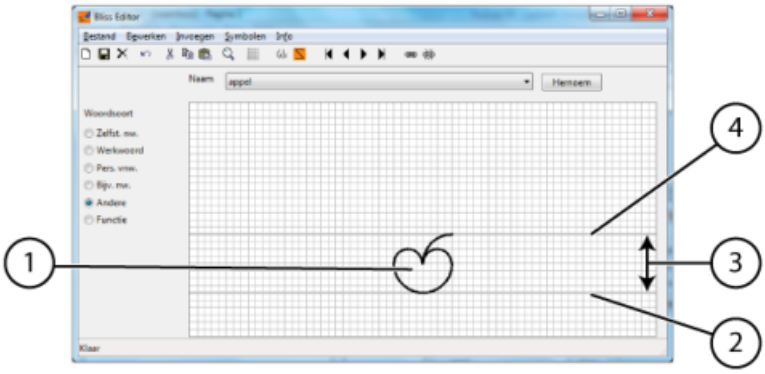
E Appendices

1 The Bliss Editor

1.1 The Bliss Editor

The Bliss Editor is a Mind Express add-on that allows you to create your own Bliss symbols. The Bliss Editor is based on the default Bliss rules. You can use the basic shapes to create new Bliss symbols or you can combine existing Bliss symbols.

The images you create with the Bliss Editor are automatically added to the Bliss symbol set.



Basic rules:

- The default Bliss area contains a top (4) line and a bottom (2) line, i.e. the skyline (4) and the base line (2). These are the two thick lines in the grid. The distance between these two lines is the default distance (3). This means that the BLISS symbol (1) is always placed between these two lines, with only a few exceptions.
- Indicators are placed at 1/4 of the default distance (3) from the sky lines. This may also be a quarter above the top part of the BLISS symbol if the relevant Bliss symbol exceeds the top line. Indicators add a grammatical meaning to a BLISS symbol.
- Pointers are placed at 1/8 of the default distance (3) from the sky line. Pointers are used to "point to" a part of the symbol.
- For compound symbols, the distance between the various parts is 1/4 of the default distance (3).

1.2 Launching the Bliss Editor

1. Open a communication grid.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Edit mode** (**F2**).
3. Edit the cell (**F5**).
4. Select **Bliss** from the drop-down list of symbol sets.
5. Select a Bliss symbol from the list.
6. Right-click on the preview of the symbol and choose **Edit Symbol** from the shortcut menu.

NOTE
An experienced computer user can open the Bliss Editor by going to the folder `C:\Program Files (x86)\Mind Express 4` *and opening the* `BlissEd.exe` *file*

The **Bliss Editor** and **Basic Symbol** dialogs are displayed.

1.3 Creating a new BLISS symbol

You can create a new BLISS symbol by:

- Using the BLISS basic shapes
- Combining existing BLISS symbols.

1. Launch the Bliss Editor. See Launching the Bliss Editor on page 172.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click **New symbol** .
   - Choose **Symbolen** > **New**
   - Press **Ctrl** + **N**.
3. Enter the name of the new symbol in the **Rename** dialog.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Do one of the following:

Insert a ...	Procedure
basic Symbol	1. Choose **Insert** > **Basic symbol** or click **Insert Basic Symbol** in the toolbar. 2. Click on a symbol from the list.

Insert a ...	Procedure
BLISS symbol	1. Choose **Insert** > **BLISS symbol** or click **Insert Bliss Symbol** in the toolbar. 2. Choose a symbol from the list or type the name of the symbol in the **Symbol** field. 3. Click **Insert**.

6. Repeat the previous step to insert further symbols.
7. As required, move the symbols by dragging them.

NOTE
*If necessary, use **Cut**, **Copy** and **Paste** to create the symbol.*

8. Choose one of the following options from **Part of speech**:
   - **Verb**
   - **Substantive**
   - **Adjective**
   - **Person**
   - **Other**
9. To save the symbol, complete one of the following actions:
   - Choose **File** > **Save**.
   - Click **Save** in the toolbar.

See also
Deleting a BLISS symbol on page 173

1.4 Grouping the elements of a BLISS symbol

You can group the elements of a symbol. As soon as a symbol has been grouped, you cannot select the separate elements again. If you click on part of the symbol, the complete symbol is selected.

1. Launch the Bliss Editor. See Launching the Bliss Editor on page 172.
2. Select the first element or symbol.
3. Press and hold **Shift** and select the other elements or symbols.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Group** in the toolbar.
   - Press **Ctrl** + **G**.
   - Choose **Symbolen** > **Group**

See also
Ungrouping a BLISS symbol on page 173

1.5 Ungrouping a BLISS symbol

Grouped symbol components can be ungrouped again. As soon as a symbol has been ungrouped, you can reselect the separate components again.

1. Launch the Bliss Editor. See Launching the Bliss Editor on page 172.
2. Select the component or symbol.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Ungroup** in the toolbar.
   - Press **Ctrl** + **U**.
   - Choose **Symbolen** > **Ungroup**

See also
Grouping the elements of a BLISS symbol on page 173

1.6 Deleting a BLISS symbol

Only a Bliss symbol you have created yourself can be deleted. The Bliss symbols from the default symbol set cannot be deleted.

1. Launch the Bliss Editor. See Launching the Bliss Editor on page 172.
2. As required, choose the symbol from the **Name** drop-down list.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Symbolen** > **Remove**.

- Click **Clear** ✕ in the toolbar.

4. Confirm in the **Bliss Editor** dialog.

See also

Creating a new BLISS symbol on page 172

2 The shared media library

If you would like to work with a shared media library with different users, we recommend using Google Drive. Google Drive is cloud storage. Google Drive places the shared library in the cloud, while each user has a copy on their local disk. If the user changes anything in his local media library, Google Drive will automatically sync the changes to the cloud, thus including user adjustments in the cloud. This way, the cloud will always have the latest version.

Moreover, any change in the cloud is also transmitted to all devices that have a local copy and the local copy is immediately adjusted for all users. All devices are continuously synchronized and as a result, each device immediately receives the changes made by a user on a device.

Benefits:

1. You can use a copy on the local disk of the device you're working on, which is faster than a network disk. You're no longer dependent on server hardware or server infrastructure. No errors due to loss of network connectivity. Network drives can occasionally cause problems in Windows, especially on WiFi networks.
2. You are not limited to network infrastructure to use a shared media library. This way, users can continue to work at home with Mind Express, on their own device with the same library. Users can share their work from different locations. All you need is an Internet connection.
3. You can continue to work if the Internet connection is temporarily disconnected. You always have a local copy.
4. You immediately have a free and secure backup of the media library in the cloud so you can't lose data. Just you and the other users have access to the shared media library in the cloud. Access is managed by your Google account.
5. Google Drive provides 15GB of free storage. This more than enough for the majority of Mind Express installations. If you need more space, you can extend storage space to 100GB for € 20 per year.

TIP
If Google Drive is not an option, you can use Dropbox or OneDrive (by Microsoft). The principle remains the same. We recommend Google Drive because you get 15GB of free storage.

3 Installing a shared media library

Below the procedure to install the shared library using Google Drive is described.

1. Create a folder on your device where you want to place the library.
   Example: `C:\Mind Express Media Library`

   For easier maintenance, choose the same name and location for this folder on each device.
2. Create a Google account. See https://accounts.google.com.
3. Install Google Drive on all machines where you want to use the shared library. See https://www.google.com/intl/nl_be/drive/download/.
4. Enter your Google Account in order to enable Google Drive.
5. Choose the **Sync Options** tab in the **Preferences - Google Drive** dialog.
6. Choose **Sync only these folders**.
7. Select the created folder `C:\Mind Express Media Library`.
8. Click **Apply**.
9. Using the file explorer, copy the entire folder containing media files from its current location (by default, this is `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\Medialib`) or from a network location to the created Google Drive folder `C:\Mind Express Media Library`.

   As soon as you place the files in the Google Drive folder, they are automatically synced to the cloud.
10. Using the file explorer, open the file `C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\Settings\globalsettings.xml`.
11. Change the file paths for DocumentFolder, ImageFolder, SoundFolder, TemplateFolder and VideoFolder to the correct Google Drive folder.
    Example: Change

    ```
    <Setting key="DocumentFolder" value="C:\Users\Public\Documents\Mind Express\MediaLib\Documents\"/>
    ```

    in

    ```
    <Setting key="DocumentFolder" value="C:\ Mind Express Media Library\Documents\"/>
    ```
12. Save the file.
    From now on, everything is configured correctly. Any change will now be automatically synchronized to the cloud.

4 Playing MP4 files

Mind Express does not support the playback of MP4 files by default. You can convert MP4 files to a format that is supported by Mind Express or you can install K-Lite.

1. Download K-Lite. http://fileforum.betanews.com/detail/KLite-Mega-Codec-Pack.
2. Execute the program.

3. Choose **Simple** as **Installation Mode**.
4. Continue clicking on **Next** and finally click **Finish**.

5 Phonetic characters

The phonetic characters used in Mind Express are:

- Realspeak
- Acapela

5.1 Acapela

5.1 US English

Table 2: Consonants

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
b	b {1 d	bad
t	t {1 b	tab
4	b E1 4 r=	better
p	p AI1 p	pipe
d	d EI1 t	date
k	k @U1 n	cone
g	g {1 g	gag
m	m {1 n	man
n	n @U1 z	nose
r	r @U1 z	rose
l	l E1 t	let
N	r I1 N	ring
f	f {1 t	fat
v	v @U1 t	vote
s	s {1 t	sat
z	z u1	zoo
S	S I1 n	shin
tS	tS I1 n	chin
Z	m E1 Z r=	measure
dZ	dZ I1 n	gin
D	D I1 s	this
T	T I1 n	thin
w	w EI1 t	wait
j	j A1 t	yacht
h	h I1 t	hit

Table 3: Vowels

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
r=	k O1 r n r=	corner
A	p A1 t	pot
O	T O1 t	thought
I	l I1 t	lit
i	n i1 t	neat
u	z u1	zoo
V	h V1 t	hut
U	p U1 t	put
{	p {1 t	pat
E	n E1 t	net
@	@ l aU1	allow
EI	m EI1 n	main
AI	h AI1	high
OI	b OI1	boy
@U	n @U1 z	nose
aU	p aU1 t	pout

5.1 UK English

Table 4: Consonants

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
b	b {1 d	bad
t	s t Q1 p	stop
t	t @ m Q1 r @U	tomorrow
t_h	t_h Q1 p	top
p	s p O:1 t	sport
p	p @ t_h eI1 t @U	potato
p_h	p_h {1 d	pad
d	d eI1 t	date
k	s k O1 n	scone
k	k { m p_h eI1 n	campaign
k_h	k_h @U1 n	cone
g	g {1 g	gag
m	m {1 n	man
n	n @U1 z	nose
r	r @U1 z	rose
l	l e1 t	let

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
L	{1 d V L t	adult
N	r I1 N	ring
f	f {1 t	fat
v	v @U1 t	vote
s	s {1 t	sat
z	z u:1	zoo
S	S I1 n	shin
tS	tS I1 n	chin
Z	m e1 Z @	measure
dZ	dZ I1 n	gin
D	D I1 s	this
T	T I1 n	thin
w	w eI1 t	wait
j	j Q1 t	yacht
h	h I1 t	hit
hj	e k s hj u:1 m	exhume
hl	hl {1 n d @ f	Llandaff
x	l Q1 x	loch

Table 5: Vowels

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
A:	f A:1 D @	father
O:	f O:1	four
I	b I1 t	bit
i:	n i:1 t	neat
u:	z u:1	zoo
V	h V1 t	hut
U	p_h U1 t	put
{	p_h {1 t	pat
e	n e1 t	net
@	@ l aU1	allow
eI	m eI1 n	main
aI	h aI1	high
OI	b OI1	boy
@U	n @U1 z	nose
aU	p_h aU1 t	pout
3:	f 3:1	fur

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
Q	d Q1 t	dot
I@	n I@1	near
e@	D e@1	there
U@	S U@1	sure
i	l @U1 k @ l i	locally
u	p_h V1 N k tS u @ L	punctual
A~	r e n eI1 s A~ s	renaissance
E~	v E~1	vin
O~	{1 v i n j O~	avignon
l=	b {1 t l= { k s	battleaxe
L=	b {1 t L=	battle
m=	eI1 T i I z m=	atheism
n=	s V1 d n=	sudden
r=	h I1 s t r= i	history

See also

Realspeak on page 178

5.2 Realspeak

5.2 US English

Table 6: Vowels and Diphthongs

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
i	‘fil	feel
I	‘fIl	fill
E	‘fEl	fell
@	‘k@t	cat
A	‘gAt	got
^	‘k^t	cut
O	‘fOl	fall
U	‘fUl	full
u	‘ful	fool
$	$.’la&U	allow
E0	‘kE0R+t	curt
O	‘dOr	door
e&I	‘fe&Il	fail
O&I	‘fO&Il	foil
a&I	‘fa&Il	file
a&U	‘fa&Ul	foul

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
o&U	‘go&Ul	goal

Table 7: Consonants

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
j	‘jEs	yes
w	‘wa&I	why
R+	‘R+Ip	rip
l	‘lIp	lip
p	‘pIt	pit
t	‘tAp	top
k	‘k@t	cat
b	‘bIt	bit
d	‘dIg	dig
g	‘gAt	got
? (glottal stop)	‘?it	eat
f	‘f@t	fat
T	‘Tin	thin
s	‘sil	seal
S	‘Sip	ship
v	‘v@t	vat
D	‘Den	then
z	‘zil	zeal
Z	‘li.Z$R+	leisure
h	‘h@t	hat
t&S	‘k@t&S	catch
d&Z	‘d&ZE0R+.ni	journey
m	‘m@n	man
n	‘n^t	nut
nK	‘R+InK	ring

5.2 UK English

Table 8: Vowels and Diphthongs

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
i	‘bit	beat
I	‘bIt	bit
E	‘bEd	bed
@	‘m@p	map

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
A	‘kA	car
A+	‘pA+t	pot
^	‘b^t	but
O	‘bOt	bought
U	‘bUk	book
u	‘but	boot
$	$.’ba&Ut	about
i0	‘R+o&U.zi0z	roses
E0	‘tE0n	turn
e&I	‘be&It	bait
O&I	‘bO&I	boy
a&I	‘ba&I	buy
a&U	‘da&Un	down
o&U	‘So&U	show
I&$	‘hI&$	here
E&$	‘DE&$	there
U&$	‘pU&$	poor

Table 9: Consonants

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
j	‘ju	you
w	‘wIt	wit
R+	‘R+a&Id	ride
l	‘lEt	let
p	‘p@n	pan
t	‘t@n	tan
k	‘k@n	can
b	‘bO&I	boy
d	‘de&I	day
g	‘gA+t	got
f	‘fa&In	fine
T	‘TIn	thin
s	‘sIn	sin
S	‘Sa&In	shine
v	‘va&In	vine
D	‘D@t	that
z	‘zo&Un	zone

Symbol	Transcription	As in:
Z	‘vI.Z$n	vision
h	‘hEd	head
t&S	‘t&SE0t&S	church
d&Z	‘d&Z^nK.g$l	jungle
m	‘ma&I	my
n	‘no&U	no
nK	‘sA+nK	song
n%)	‘dI.dn%)t	didn't
l%)	‘b@.tl%)	battle

See also

Acapela on page 175

6 Keyboard shortcuts

Keyboard shortcut	Explanation
Backspace	To clear the label of a cell in Edit mode. To clear the last character in a message. To do this, the **Allow typing in Message box** option must be enabled. See Allow typing in a message on page 169)
Ctrl + A	Select all.
Ctrl + C	Copy.
Ctrl + D	To search for pages that contain a specific label or a certain action in Mouse mode.
Ctrl + F	To search for a label or action in Edit mode.
Ctrl + F10	To make it easy to translate a communication grid using the translation option.
Ctrl + F11	To make it easy on a communication grid to replace the symbols from one symbol set, with symbols from another symbol set.
Ctrl + F9	To replace one symbol by another symbol on an extensive communication grid with several pages.
Ctrl + G	To navigate to a chosen page. To group symbols in the Bliss Editor.
Ctrl + I	The label and the text are captured. When typing, only the symbol of the selected cell is changed.
Ctrl + L	The symbol and the text are captured. When typing, only the label of the selected cell is changed.
Ctrl + M	The symbol and the label are captured. When typing, only the text of the selected cell is changed.
Ctrl + N	To create a new file in Mind Express. To create a new Bliss symbol in the Bliss Editor.
Ctrl + O	To open a file from the media library.
Ctrl + Left Arrow	Previous style.

Keyboard shortcut	Explanation
Ctrl + Up Arrow	Previous image.
Ctrl + Down Arrow	Next image.
Ctrl + Right Arrow	Next style.
Ctrl + S	To save a file.
Ctrl + Shift + C	To take a screenshot of the page.
Ctrl + Shift + I	To show / hide the cell in Edit mode.
Ctrl + Shift + U	To select / deselect the cell in Edit mode.
Ctrl + Shift + M	To open the media libraries.
Ctrl + Shift + V	To paste the captured screenshot into a cell.
Ctrl + U	To ungroup a BLISS symbol in the Bliss Editor.
Ctrl + V	Paste.
Ctrl + X	Cut.
Ctrl + Y	Redo.
Ctrl + Z	Undo.
Delete	To clear the cell contents of a Grid page type or to delete a cell on a Freestyle page type in Edit mode.
End	To go to the last page.
ESC	To display the menu and the title bar.
F1	Opens the Mind Express Help pages.
F2	Switch between Edit mode and Mouse mode.
F3	To find the next cell that matches the search query entered.
F4	Fill cells.
F5	Open the **Edit** window, after selecting a cell in Edit mode.
F6	Open or close the **Symbols** window.
F7	Open or close the **Actions** window.
F8	Open the **Page settings** window.
F9	Open the **Style settings** window.
Home	To go to the first page.
Insert	Add a new page.
Page Down	To go to the next page.
Page Up	To go to the previous page.
Shift + Ctrl + F8	To delete the duplicate styles.
Shift + Delete	Clear the symbol, label and text of a cell. The cell style is retained.
Shift + Insert	Add a new page and create a link to the new page.
Shift + Tab	Select the previous cell.
Tab	Select the next cell.

7 Managing the web license

7.1 Creating an account

In order to use the software package with the web license, you must first create an account.

1. Open the software package.
   Example: Sprint
2. Click **Register user**.
3. Enter the serial number.
   Example: SPR12345-AB67C890
   The serial number was sent to you by email.
4. Enter the remaining details.
5. Click **OK**.

7.2 Managing your web license

You can manage your web license from my.jabbla.com. There you can view how many licenses you own and the validity period of the licenses. You can also:

- add, edit, delete users, groups, administrators,
- reserve licenses for a user or group.

1. Go to my.jabbla.com.
2. Enter your user name and password and click **OK**.

7.3 Adding a user

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Open the group you want to add the user to.
3. Choose > **Add user**.
4. Enter the details and click **OK**.

7.4 Adding an administrator

As an administrator, you can view your product details (number of licenses and the validity period) and you can do the following in your own group and in all underlying groups:

- add, edit, delete users, groups, administrators,
- reserve licenses for a user or group.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Open the group you want to add an administrator to.
   The administrator will only be able to manage users in the group and in the subgroups.
3. Choose > **Add group admin**.
4. Enter the details and click **OK**.

7.5 Adding a group

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Open the group you want to add the group to.
3. Choose > **Add group**.
4. Enter the details and click **OK**.

7.6 Adding a class

There are two ways to add a class:

- You add one user with the name of the class (for example: Computer Class), see Adding a user on page 183. You assign the necessary licenses to the user (for example: 20), see Assigning multiple licenses to a user on page 184.
- You add a group with the name of the class (for example: Computer Class), see Adding a group on page 183. You create 20 users in the group, see Adding a user on page 183.

7.7 Editing the user details

You can edit the user name, email address and password.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.

2. Click on the user of click ✎ next to the user.
3. On the **Account** tab, edit the name of the user and click **OK**.

7.8 Editing the name of a group

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Click ✎ next to the group.
3. Change the name of the group and click **OK**.

7.9 Viewing the number of licenses and their validity period

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Click **Subscription**.
   The **Product details** are displayed. You can find the number of licenses in **Number of licenses** and the validity period can be found next to **Protection**.

   NOTE
   You can also find the number of licenses and the validity period of the licenses next to the serial number in the home screen.

7.10 Assigning multiple licenses to a user

Example: You create a "Care Class" for a class and assign 20 licenses to the class. Twenty students can log in simultaneously with the user name "Care Class", on condition that there are 20 licenses available.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the user and click on ✎ next to the user.
3. Choose the **Advanced** tab.
4. Enter the **Number of licenses**.
   This number is the number of users that can log in using this user name.
5. Optional: select the **Reserve licenses** option if you always want the licenses to be prioritized.

   NOTE
   Reserved licenses can no longer be used by other users! Licenses that have not been reserved, cannot be guaranteed, however, they remain available to other users if they are not used.
6. Click **OK**.

7.11 Reserving a license for a user

You can prioritize the use of a license for a user by reserving a license. The reserved license can only be used by that specific user.

For example: you have a web license with 10 licenses. You reserve a license for two users, so these users can always use the software package. There are still eight licenses available, to be used by any of the other users.

You can also reserve multiple licenses for one user.

For example: to use the license for a full class, one user is created, to include 20 licenses that are reserved. All students log in as the same user. Each student who is logged on, uses one of the 20 reserved licenses for this user.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the user and click on ✎ next to the user.
3. Choose the **Advanced** tab.
4. Select the **Reserve licenses** option and enter the number of licenses to reserve.
5. Select the **Expiry date for using software** option and enter the date the reserved licenses expire.
6. Click **OK**.

7.12 Reserving licenses for a group

The reserved licenses can only be used by the users of this group.

For example: a school purchases 100 licenses. They create a group for each class, with 10 licenses for each group. By adding an administrator to each group, the licenses can be managed in more detail.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the group and click ✎ next to the group.

3. Select the **Reserve licenses** option and enter the number of licenses to reserve.
4. Click **OK**.

7.13 Time limit on using the software (user)

By entering an expiration date, you can put a time limit on how long a user can use the software.

For example: A student has access to the software package until the end of the school year.

If the user has been added to a group with an expiration date, then the earliest expiration date is valid.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the user and click on next to the user.
3. Choose the **Advanced** tab.
4. Select the **Expiry date for using software** option and enter the date after which the software can no longer be used.
5. Click **OK**.

7.14 Time limit on using the software (group)

By entering an expiration date, you can put a time limit on how long a group can use the software.

For example: A group has access to the software package until the end of the school year.

If the user has been added to a group with an expiration date, then the earliest expiration date is valid.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the group and click next to the group.
3. Choose the **Advanced** tab.
4. Select the **Expiry date for using software** option and enter the date after which the software can no longer be used.
5. Click **OK**.

7.15 Assigning administrative rights to a user

The user must have administrative rights in order to manage the web licenses in a specific group. The user must also be added to the group or be at a higher level than the group in order to manage the group.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the user and click on next to the user.
3. Choose the **Advanced** tab.
4. Select the **Administrator** option.
5. Click **OK**.
   In the list, appears in front of the user name.

7.16 Deleting the administrative rights of a user

If a user no longer needs the required rights to manage the web licenses, you can delete their administrative rights. If the user no longer needs the licenses, you can also delete the user.

1. Log in to my.jabbla.com.
2. Find the user and click on next to the user.
3. Choose the **Advanced** tab.
4. Deselect the **Administrator** option.
5. Click **OK**.
   In the list, appears in front of the user name.

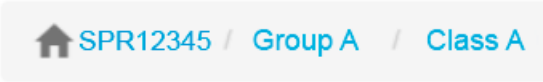
7.17 Deleting a user or a group

When a group or user is deleted, this is permanent cannot be undone!

1. Click next to the user or group.
2. Confirm in the dialog.

7.18 Navigate

1. Click on a group to open the group.
2. In the breadcrumb trail, click on the name of the group to return.
   Example:



7.19 Signing out of web license management

You are automatically signed out after 5 minutes. You can also sign out yourself.

Click **Logout**.
The login window is displayed.

Index

A

Abbreviation
- delete from word prediction list 163
- in word prediction list edit 163
- to word prediction list add 162

Acapela 175
Accessibility 12
Account
- create 183

Action
- Address book 71
- Agenda 76
- Battery 69
- Calculator 102
- Call 107
- Camera 77
- Change cell 58
- Compare 100, 101
- Date/time 69
- Dynamic lists 111
- E-mail 81
- Environmental control 90
- eye control 125
- GEWA 88
- Go to level 84
- Grammar 68
- Internet 92, 93, 93, 94, 94
- Log 96
- Message 65
- Messages 106
- Mobi 117
- Mobi 2 117
- Music And Video 97, 98, 99, 100
- Open document 63
- Phone 106
- Phonetic 83
- Run application 104
- script 125
- Slideshow 78
- Smart 3 120
- Sound 63
- Tellus 4 118
- Tellus 5 118
- User 85
- Volume 112
- Wait 112
- Windows Control 113
- Zingui 2 119

Activation code
- by e-mail request 18
- by telephone request 18
- enter 18

Activity
- add 72
- delete 74
- edit 73

Add-on activate 157
Address book
- action add 71

Address book cell 71
Administrative rights
- assign to user 185
- delete from a user 185

Administrator
- add 183

Advance
- play sound 143, 143
- set when pressing or releasing settings on scanning selection 143

Agenda
- action add 76
- activity add 72
- activity change 73
- activity delete 74
- alarm add 74
- alarm change 74
- alarm delete 75
- background setting 75
- create 75
- view 72

Agenda cell 75
Alarm
- add 74
- delete 75
- edit 74

Alea 147
Analyze click behavior 95
Animated gif
- action add 58

Applications
- new 4.3.2 10
- new 4.3.3 10
- new 4.3.4 11, 11

Appointment
- add 72
- edit 73

Attachment
- to email 82

Auditory feedback set
- on mouse selection 136
- on scanning selection 144

Auto-learn 159
Automatic capitalization
- on word prediction settings 165

B

Background
- agenda settings 75
- settings 40

Backup
- transfer to different devices 90

Backup create
- of GEWA infrared codes 87
- of infrared codes 89

Battery
level display 69
level say aloud 69
Beta 12
Blink
enable/disable 154
settings 154
Blink time
settings 154
Bliss
Editor launch 172
Bliss Editor
starting up 172
BLISS symbol
adjust view 49
create 172
delete 173
elements group 173
ungrouping components 173
Bluetooth 83
Boardmaker file
importing 37

C

Calculator
action add 102
cell 102
create 103
Calibrate
eye control 148, 148, 155
Calibration
improve (only in Tobii) 156
Call
action add 107
call number 105
contact from address book call 105
number entered 105
recipient call 105
Camera
action add 77
Camera cell 77
Carla
open file 24
Case-sensitive
on word prediction settings 164
Cell
add to dynamic list 110
align 61
changing draggability (action) 58
changing label (action) 58
changing selectability (action) 58
changing symbol (action) 58
changing visibility (action) 58
clear contents (Freestyle) 60
compare cells 101
contents clear (Grid) 60
copying 55
customize draggability 56
customize style 51
customize type 56
customize visibility 56
customizing selectability 56
delete 60
edit 44, 58
editing text 49
edit order 61
filling using the toolbar 45
fill using the Edit window 46
label clear 49
label edit 49
label quick edit 49
move (freestyle) 86
moving 56
multiple symbols add 47
quick customize style 51
quick-edit symbol 47
Quick Fill a cell 45
Quick Fill cells 54
replacing (action) 58
restore default label 49
scan word add 61
scrolling label (action) 58
select 44
send to back/bring to front 61
settings edit 56
size change 55
sound add 63
switch around 56
symbol, label and text clear 60
symbol edit 46
text quick-edit 50
the same dimensions resize to 61
to multiple pages copy 56
with no action skip 143
Change the active window 114
Class
add 183
assign multiple licenses 184
Clock
add 69
Column
delete 40
insert 39
Communication grid 22
COM Port
settings 87
Connecting
the call with Eddy (from the menu) 84
to Eddy (from the menu) 84
Contact
add 70
call 105
delete 71
edit 70
from address book call 105
from address book send text message 107
Control 23
Copy
creating a document 32
Cursor
display registered movements 96
register movements 96

D

Date
read out loud 69
Day
read out loud 69
Default cell 122

Diagram cell 123
Display
device 168
Display login window on startup 130
Document
add to media library by double-clicking 31
add to media library by importing 31
add to media library using Explorer 30
copying 32
edit settings 33
export 33
export to Zingui/Smart 3 119, 121
import from Zingui/Smart 120, 121
importing 37
new document create 32
open from another document 63
preference settings 34
requesting settings 33
show links 34
size settings 34, 36
to media library add 29, 30
Draggability
changing (action) 58
of cell edit 56
Dropbox 174
Dwell
indicator on mouse selection 134
indicator settings on eye control 152
memory time setting on mouse selection 135
memory time settings on eye control selection 154
selection settings on eye control selection 152
selection settings on joystick selection 139
selection settings on mouse selection 134
set indicator on joystick selection 139
set time with mouse selection 135
start and stop settings 136
time settings on eye control selection 153
time settings on joystick selection 140
Dynamic list
action add 111
add cell 110
add multiple items 110
adjust contents 111
create 109
edit (method 1) 109
edit (method 2) 109
item add 109
item delete 110
items sort 110
Dynamic lists cell 111
Dynamic page cell 116
Dynamic pages 115

E

Eddy
clear text 84
connection to (from the menu) 84
disconnecting (from the menu) 84
search 84
settings 83
what is the Eddy? 83
Edge 147
Edit
cell 44
contact 70
mode 24
options configure 168
settings of document 33
symbol 47
Edit mode
by right-clicking in Mouse mode 168
display colored bar 168
Edit mode indicator 22, 168
Edit Toolbar 24
E-mail
action add 81
add attachment 82
adding a subject 82
as attachment send 80
manage 82
settings 79
sound settings 80
visual feedback settings 80
Email address
edit 183
E-mail cell 80
Environmental control
action add 90
settings 88
Event
add 72
edit 73
Expiration date
software use (group) 185
software use (user) 185
Export
current document to Zingui/Smart 3 119, 121
log file 95
of document 33
style set 54
user data 130
Eye control
action add 125
Alea 147
blink settings 154
calibrate 148, 155
cell 125
dwell indicator settings 152
dwell selection settings 152
dwell time settings 153
Edge 147
enable/disable by blinking 154
Eyetech 147
jitter margin on external dwell 153
MyGaze 147
post selection time settings 155
select and calibrate type 148
selected cell enlarged display 151
selection indicator settings 150
select when pressing or releasing settings 155
set dwell memory time 154
settings 147
sound when selecting play 152
starting the camera 156
stop camera 156
switch 154
Tobii 147

Eye control camera
starting up 156
stop 156
Eyetech 147

F

Favorites settings 91
Feedback
auditory feedback set on mouse selection 136
auditory feedback set on scanning selection 144
File
edit 24
import from Zingui/Smart 120, 121
importing 37
open 23
opening a secure file 24
recently opened file open 24
save 24
Find
in document (Edit mode) 37
in document (Mouse mode) 36
Fixed license
edit 22
Freestyle 41
Frequency
editing word in word prediction list 161
editing word pair 162

G

Gaze Interaction Software 157
GEWA
action add 88
backup create 87
COM Port settings 87
infrared cod transmit 88
record infrared code 87
restore backup 87
Google Drive 174
Grammar 68
Grid file
importing 37
Group
add 183
delete 185
edit name 184
time limit on use 185

H

HASP
edit 22
Heatmap
enable registration 96
Home page Internet settings 90

I

ID
cell 58
Image
add to media library using Explorer 29
from Internet into cell paste 59
of user change 128
to media library add 29
Import
Boardmaker file 37
file 37
file from Zingui/Smart 120, 121
Grid file 37
style set 54
user data 131
Inches 170
Indicator
dwell indicator settings on eye control 152
selection settings 133, 151
set dwell indicator on joystick selection 139
set dwell indicator on mouse selection 134
Infrared code
backup create 87, 89
learn 88, 90
Record GEWA infrared code 87
restore backup 87, 89
teaching (in Edit mode) 89
transmit 88, 90
Installation
custom setup 17
default setup 16
Internet
element action add 93
favorites action add 94
favorites settings 91
filter disable 91
home page settings 90
navigate action add 92
scroll action add 93
type action add 94
Internet cell 92

J

JabblaIR 86, 88
Jitter margin settings 136, 153
Joystick control 23
Joystick selection
dwell indicator settings 139
dwell selection settings 139
dwell time settings 140
post selection time settings 141
selected cell enlarged display 138
selection indicator auto wrap 139
selection indicator settings 137
selection indicator to auto advance 141
select when pressing or releasing settings 139
sound when selecting play 141

K

Keyboard shortcuts 181

L

Label
- changing (action) 58
- edit 49
- erase 49
- quick-edit 49
- restore default label 49
- scrolling (action) 58

Language
- Mind Express settings 169
- of the voice settings 157

Level
- action at another level add 59
- edit 84

License
- activate 18, 18, 18
- activate over the Internet 19
- assign multiple 184
- delete over the Internet 20
- delete using the removal code 21
- edit 25
- quantity 184
- reserve (group) 184
- reserve (user) 184
- validity 184

Link
- show 34

Log cell 96

Log file
- delete 95
- export 95

Log in
- with different user 130

Logs
- action add 96
- frequency turn on/off 95
- turn on/off 95

M

Making a call 104, 104

Media library
- add image 29
- add image using Explorer 29
- contents view 28
- document add 29, 30
- document add by double-clicking 31
- document add by importing 31
- document add using Explorer 30
- share 174
- shared installation 174
- view change 28

Menu bar
- show/hide 167

Message
- action add 106
- activate 65
- cell 64
- clear last character 65
- completely clear 65
- options configure 64
- print 65
- read full 65
- save as file 67
- save in empty cell 67
- save to existing cell 67
- typing in message allow 169

Millimeter 170

Mind Express
- install 16
- license change 25
- shutting down 25
- starting up 21
- update 25
- update using Internet connection 25
- update without Internet connection 25

Mind Express Player 13

Mind Express Print 13

Mind Express window
- activate 115
- edit 114

Mind Express with a web license
- starting up 22

Mobi
- action add 117

Mobi 2
- action add 117
- display 168

Mouse
- while scanning use 144

Mouse control 23

Mouse pointer
- show 133, 151

Mouse selection
- auditory feedback set 136
- dwell indicator settings 134
- dwell selection settings 134
- dwell time settings 135
- jitter margin on external dwell 136
- post selection time settings 136
- selected cell enlarged display 133
- selection indicator settings 132
- select when pressing or releasing settings 133
- set dwell memory time 135
- sound when selecting play 136
- start and stop dwelling settings 136

Music
- action add 97
- fast-forward, rewind 100
- start, stop, pause 100
- starting up 97

Music playlist
- action add 98
- create 98

my.jabbla.com
- log in 183
- sign out 186

Mycore
- open file 24

MyGaze 147

N

Name
- edit (group) 184
- edit (user) 183

name of user edit 129

Navigate 185

Navigation 39

O

One Drive 174
Overview
- new features 4.3.2 10
- new features 4.3.3 10
- new features 4.3.4 11, 11

P

Page
- add 38
- always go back 41
- as pop-up 40
- background setting 40
- column delete 40
- column insert 39
- Compare pages 100
- copy and paste 38
- delete 39
- duplicate 38
- link 62
- load into dynamic cell 116
- navigate through pages 39
- print 43
- row delete 40
- row insert 39
- settings 39
- to new page link 62
- to other page link 62

Password
- edit 183
- menu bar 167
- of user change 129

Paste screenshot into cell 59
Pause cell
- show eyes 156

PCEyeGo 157
PCEye Mini 157
PCS 12
Phone
- action add 106
- answer 104
- call number 105
- cell 108
- contact call 105
- contact from address book call 105
- end 104
- recipient call 105
- settings 104

Phonetic
- action add 83

Phonetic transcription 175, 178
Picto 12
Picture This 12
Playlist
- for music create 98
- for video create 99

Play MP4 174
Podd
- open file 24

Pop-up 40
Post selection time settings
- on eye control selection 155
- on joystick selection 141
- on mouse selection 136

Prediction cell 122
Preferences
- of document set 34

Priority
- of recent words settings 164

Program
- language settings 169
- start up 104

Pronunciation
- change word 158

R

Reading speed settings 157
Realspeak 178
Recipient
- call 105
- Sending SMS messages 107

Recording
- settings 168

Removal code
- by e-mail request 21
- by telephone request 20

Reserve
- license for user 184
- licenses for group 184

Restore backup
- of GEWA infrared codes 87
- of infrared codes 89

Restore backup of text messages 105
Row
- delete 40
- insert 39

S

Save
- auto save changes 170
- document preferences 34

Scan
- method setting 144
- mouse use 144
- preference settings 145
- scan group settings 147
- timing settings 146

Scan indicator
- settings 141

Scanning 23
Scanning selection
- cell with no action skip 143
- method setting 144
- mouse use 144
- preference settings 145
- scan indicator settings 141
- selected cell enlarged display 142
- select when pressing or releasing settings 143
- set auditory scanning 144
- sound when selecting play 143
- timing settings 146

Scanword add 61
Script
- action add 125
- create 124

Secure file
open 24
Security
edit 22
Security key
edit 22
Select
display selected cell enlarged on eye control selection 151
display selected cell enlarged on mouse selection 133
display selected cell enlarged on scanning selection 142
dwell indicator settings on eye control 152
dwell memory time setting on mouse selection 135
dwell memory time settings on eye control selection 154
dwell selection settings on eye control selection 152
dwell selection settings on joystick selection 139
dwell selection settings on mouse selection 134
dwell time settings on eye control selection 153
dwell time settings on joystick selection 140
mouse pointer show 133, 151
play sound on eye control 152
post selection time on eye control selection 155
post selection time settings on joystick selection 141
post selection time settings on mouse selection 136
scan indicator settings 141
selected cell enlarged on joystick selection 138
selection indicator settings on eye control selection 150
selection indicator settings on joystick selection 137
selection indicator settings on mouse selection 132
selection indicator show 133, 151
set dwell indicator on joystick selection 139
set dwell indicator on mouse selection 134
set dwell time with mouse selection 135
set when pressing or releasing settings on scanning selection 143
sound play on joystick selection 141
sound play on mouse selection 136
sound play on scanning selection 143
when pressing or releasing on eye control 155
when pressing or releasing settings on joystick selection 139
when pressing or releasing settings on mouse selection 133
Selectability
changing (action) 58
of cell edit 56
Selection
by scanning 141
settings 131
with joystick 137
with mouse 131
Selection indicator
auto advance 141
auto wrap 139
settings on eye control selection 150
settings on joystick selection 137
settings on mouse selection 132
show 133, 151
Select voice 157
Sending SMS messages 104
Sentence prediction 165
Sentence prediction list
add sentence 166
automatically add sentences 166
delete 166
edit 166
find sentence 165
Serial number
checking 19
Set auditory scanning 144
Set black list 91
Settings
of cell edit 56
of document edit 33
of document request 33
Set white list 91
Show eyes in pause cell 156
Shutting down 25
Sign out 186
Size
settings 34, 36
Slideshow
action add 78
Slideshow cell 77
Smart
export to Smart 119, 121
import document from Smart 120, 121
Smart3
add camera action 122
Smart 3
action add 120
display 168
Smart 3 Camera cell 122
SMS
contact from address book send text message 107
for new SMS messages check 108
recipient send SMS message 107
restore backup 105
to number send 108
using the menu 104
Sound
action add 63
on advance play 143
when selecting on eye control selection 152
when selecting on mouse selection 136
when selecting on scanning selection 143
when selecting play on joystick selection 141
Speech dictionary
add 158
copying 158
delete 158
using 158
word add 158
word delete 159
Speech settings 157
Start document
of user change 129
Start up 21, 22
Start-up
options configure 167
Startwords add, change, delete 163
Status cell 122
Style
create 51
delete 53
delete duplicate 54
edit 52
of cell edit 51
of cell quick-edit 51
Styleset
export 54
importing 54
Subject
add to email 82
Switch
eye control 154

Symbol
changing (action) 58
edit 47
multiple symbols to cell add 47
of cell edit 46
of cell quick-edit 47
replace 42
Symbol prediction 34
Symbol set
enable or disable 167
overview show 19
replace 43
SymbolStix 12
System Requirements 16

T

Take photo
Smart3 122
Target Group 14
Tellus 4
action add 118
display 168
Tellus 5
action add 118
display 168
Template
create 33
using 32
Text
edit 49
quick-edit 50
translate 42
Time
read out loud 69
Time format
settings 169
Time indicator cell 75
Time limit
settings (group) 185
setup (user) 185
Timing
on scanning settings 146
Tira 86, 88
Title bar
show/hide 167
Tobii 147, 157
Toolbar 22
Translate 42
TwoSwitches
open file 24
Type
Address book 71
Agenda 75
Battery 69
Calculator 102
Camera 77
Clock 69
Default 122
diagram 123
Dynamic lists 111
Dynamic page 116
E-mail 80
eye control 125
Internet 92
Log 96
Message 64
Music And Video 99
of cell edit 56
Phone 108
Prediction 122
Slideshow 77
Smart 3 Camera 122
status 122
Time indicator 75

U

unit
settings 170
Update
with Internet connection 25
without Internet connection 25
User
action add 85
add 128, 183
assign administrative rights 185
assign multiple licenses 184
change password 129, 183
delete 130, 185
delete administrative rights 185
editing the email address 183
edit name 129, 183
image change 128
settings 128
start document edit 129
time limit on use 185
User Data
export 130
importing 131
user-defined drawing of cells 41

V

Validity 184
Version
checking 19
Video
action add 99
fast-forward, rewind 100
start, stop, pause 100
Video cell 99
Video playlist
action add 100
create 99
Visibility
changing (action) 58
of cell edit 56
Volume
action add 112
general volume settings 157
voice volume settings 157

W

Wait
action add 112
until sound has stopped 112

Waiting time
settings 112
Web license
manage 183
sign out 186
Web security
edit 22
Widgit 12
Window 22
Windows control
action add 113
Windows Control
activate 113
Windows Control (Tobii) 157
Word
change pronunciation 158
editing frequency in word prediction list 161
Word pair
create 161
editing frequency 162
Word prediction
auto-learning settings 159
automatic capitalization settings 165
case-sensitive settings 164
minimal length setting 164
priority of recent words settings 164
setting maximum number of repetitions 164
Word prediction list
abbreviation add 162
abbreviation delete 163
add 160
copying 160
delete 160
editing abbreviation 163
frequency of a word change 161
start words 163
word add 160
word delete 161
word pair create 161

Z

Zingui
display 168
export to Zingui 119, 121
import document from Zingui 120, 121
Zingui 2
action add 119
display 168